ARCHLine.XP[®] 2024

Windows

INTERMEDIATE COURSE

Architectural and Interior Design

Tutorial

Information in this document is subject to change without notice and does not represent a commitment on the part of CadLine. The software, which includes the information contained in any databases, described in this document is furnished under a license agreement or nondisclosure agreement. The software may be used or copied only in accordance with the terms of the agreement. It is against the law to copy the software on any medium except as specifically allowed in the license or nondisclosure agreement. The licensee (purchaser) may make one copy of the software for the purpose of creating a -backup copy. No part of this tutorial may be reproduced, transmitted, transcribed, or translated into any language in any form or by any means, without the express written permission of CadLine.

2024 CadLine. All rights reserved.

In no event shall CadLine be liable for special, indirect or consequential damages in connection with or arising from the use of this document or any programs contained herein.

Microsoft, MS, and MS-DOS are registered trademarks and Windows is a trademark of Microsoft Corporation.

ARCHLine.XP^{® is} a trademark of CadLine.

This tutorial was produced using Microsoft Word and ARCHLine.XP®.

Contents

1.	Workshop	: Material management	11
	1.1.	Create new material	
	1.1.1.	Creating a new material from color	
	1.1.2.	Downloading material from the ARCHLine.XP Warehouse	
	1.1.3.	Downloading the texture from manufacturer's website	
	1.1.4.	Creating new material from texture	
	1.1.5.	Downloading material from the 3D Warehouse	
	1.2.	Material properties	
	1.3.	Material/ I exture editing	
	1.3.1.	Creating a seamless pattern	
	1.3.2.	Coloring material and textures in 3D	
	1.3.3.	Materials with transparent background – Alfa channel	
	1.3.4.	Bump mapping – with the pattern of the original image	
	1.4.	Color cards	
	1.5.	PBR materials	
2.	Workshop	: Visual design	47
	2.1.	Viewpoint setting	
	2.2.	Sun position	
	2.3.	Material Options - Render Styles	
	2.3.1.	Material adjustment on architectural elements - Phase 1	53
	2.3.2.	Material adjustment on furniture - Phase 2	62
	2.4.	Artificial lights	
	2.5.	Final render image	
3.	Workshop	: Importing architectural plans	
	3.1	Ruenrint: Converting floor plans from images to 3D models	75
	3.1.	Importing a Raster Image	
	3.1.2.	Scaling to real life distance	
	3.1.3.	Converting lines to walls – Generative floor plan	
	3.2.	Import floorplan as image	
	3.2.1.	Import raster image	
	3.2.2.	Calibration	
	3.2.3.	Rotate the image	80
	3.2.4.	Create wall styles	81
	3.2.5.	Draw a wall	82
	3.3.	Import floor plan from raster PDF file	
	3.3.1.	Import a PDF file as a raster image	
	3.3.2.		
	3.3.3.	Create walls	
	3.4.	Import a noor plan from a vector PDF file as geometry	00
	3.4.1.	Draw walls on DWC floor plan	۰۵۵۸ ۵۵
	3/3	Creating niche	
	344	Place openings	
	3.4.5.	Create window chamfer	
	3.5.	Blueprint: Automatic BIM modeling from 2D DWG floor plans	
	3.5.1.	Import DWG drawing	
	3.5.2.	Converting the drawing into a Local group	
	3.5.3.	Generative Floor Plan – Creating a 3D BIM model	
	3.5.4.	Create corner window	101
	3.5.5.	Display Lineweights on screen	102
	3.5.6.	Create First floor	103
	3.6.	Importing IFC model	
	3.6.1.	IFC tajlok importálása	
	3.6.2.	Using the model after importing	
	3.1.	Importing Revit file	
	3.7.1.	Importing KVT and KFA Files	
	3.1.2.	Using the model alter importance in the model of the mode	
	3.7.3.	119	
4.	Workshop	: How to save and manage large-size projects	127
	4.1	Save Project	127



	4.2.	Backup archive	127
	4.2.1.	Recover Backup Archive	
	4.3.	Automatic save	
	4.4.	OneDrive backup restrictions	
	4.5.	Running out of space on the C: drive?	
	4.6.	Copy project detail	
	4.7.	Organizing projects	
	4.7.1.	Organizing layers: Layer variations	
	4.7.2.	Settings and naming the perspective views	
	4.8.	Managing large-size projects	
	4.8.1.	Delete unnecessary 3D solids	
	4.8.2.	Delete too large objects and those contain too much materials	
	4.8.3.	Delete unused materials in the project	
	4.9.	Tips to avoid IT problems in 10 points	
	4.9.1.	Does the computer meet the recommended system requirements?	
	4.9.2.	Integrated video card	
	4.9.3.	Is there enough space on the C:\ drive?	
	4.9.4.	Is the ARCHLine XP project save folder on OneDrive?	
	4.9.5	Distant element	152
	4.9.6.	Does the number of surfaces in the model exceed 2.000.000?	
	4.9.7.	Are there elements with extremely large surfaces in the Object Library?	
	498	Is there an object in the plan that contains more than 50 materials?	152
	499	Does the number of unused materials in the project exceed several hundred?	153
	4 9 10	Did the ARCHI ine XP program send a warning from the aforementioned?	153
	4.0.10.		
5.	Workshop	: KBB - Modelling and furniture design	157
	51	Adding drawers, changing fronts	157
	52	Creating a front with hidden handles	160
	521	Creating alternative front variations	162
	5.3	Creating a curved cabinet	165
	531	Creating a curved counterton	170
	532	Modifying the plinth	
	5 /	Modify fronts	
	5/1	Drawers with multiple bandles	
	542	Change the color of fronts	
	5.4.2.	Creating documentation	
	5.5.	Create an evaleded view	
	5.5.1.	Create tage	
	5.5.2.	Creating on Eyeol list	
	5.5.5. E E A		
	5.5.4.		
6.	Workshop	: Upholstered furniture based on profiles	
	6.1.	Esmeralda ottoman	
	611	Creating Esmeralda legs	183
	612	Create the base for Esmeralda ottoman	186
	613	Create Esmeralda seat cushion	188
	614	How to assemble Esmeralda ottoman	189
	615	How to modify assembled object?	192
	6.2	Marsaille chair	102
	621		
	6.2.1.	Creating Marcaille logs	
	6.2.2.	Create the seat cushion	100
	0.2.3.	Create the back of Margaille aboir	
	0.2.4.	Accomble Marcaille chair	
	0.2.3.		
7.	Workshop	: Stairs and railing	213
	71	Placing stairwell and stairs	213
	711	Modifying properties of the previously placed stairs	214
	712	Create handrail	
	72	Create gallery	210
	7.3	Placing Spiral Stair	
	7.3. 721	Modify Spiral stairs properties	
	722	Placing handrail	
	7.3.2.	Placing column	
	1.3.3. 721	Cutting the elah	
	1.3.4. 79 E	Handraile along the clab cutting	
	7 A	Handrail on gallery	
	1. 4 . 7/1	Modify the style of the handrail	
	7.4.1.	Nouriy ure style of the handrail	
	1.5.	บนอเบาแอยน และเนนเล่น	

Contents

4

5

	7.6.	Customised stairs	239
	7.6.1.	Specifying a stair by treads	239
	7.6.2.	Editing the staircase	
	7.6.3.	Handrail on the side of the stairs	243
	7.6.4.	Place wall along the stairs	
	7.7.	Floating stair with steel support	
	7.7.1.	New stair	
	7.7.2.	Selecting the stair support	250
	7.7.3.	Creating a glass railing	252
8.	Workshop:	Designing roofs	261
	8.1.	Open and save project.	
	8.2.	Settings and creating styles.	
	8.2.1.	Roof - settings	
	8.2.2.	Creating styles	
	8.3.	Creating roof plane with 3 points	
	8.4.	Roof in Sketch mode	
	8.5.	Extruded roof	274
	8.6.	Loft slab	278
	8.6.1.	Managing levels	278
	8.6.2.	Creating Slab	280
	8.7.	Placing openings	282
	8.7.1.	Placing roof window	282
	8.7.2.	Place customized windows	286
	8.7.3.	Conservatory with curtain walls	288
	8.7.4.	Creating complex roof window	290
	8.8.	Blinds and curtains on roof windows	293
9.	Workshop:	: Design Phases	299
	9.1.	Design phases	299
	9.2.	Phase filters	300
	9.3.	Graphic overrides	303
	9.4.	Design phases on the sheets	304

♣ A R C H I N E.♥

What is ARCHLine.XP_®?

We highly recommend the Intermediate Training Tutorial to our potential and current ARCHLine.XP® users who successfully completed the ARCHLine.XP Preliminary Courses.

The course contains 9 workshops:

Material management, Importing architectural plans, Save and manage large-size projects, KBB - Modelling and furniture design, Upholstered furniture based on profiles, Stairs and railing, Roof design, Visual design, Design phases. After accomplishing these workshops, you will be able to execute more challenging and advanced design tasks.

Enjoy the successful design! CadLine

Start your design and work with ARCHLine.XP®

This training material is a guidance to help you to become familiar with the typical interior design examples, and enables you to create more complex designs. To get the most out of the tutorial, run the ARCHLine.XP® program and the appropriate YouTube video to try those features and tools which can be found in this training material.

For most workshops you will need an initial project!

To complete tasks please download the <u>Intermediate Course – Interior design – Workshop Projects 2024</u> from our website and install to your computer. This contains all projects for Intermediate workshops.



Workshop 1: Material management



1. Workshop: Material management

During this workshop we will take a look on one of the most important aspects of the work of interior designers: How can we create good quality materials and textures for our plans that helps us present them even more realistically? Let's see the following steps:

Creating material

- Creating new material from color
- Downloading new material from the Showroom
- Downloading new texture from the internet, from the manufacturer's website
- Creating new material from texture by copying or browsing the downloaded image file
- Creating and using Sprite

Material properties

- Material properties settings
- Render styes

Material / Texture editing

- Resizing and rotating material in 3D
- Editing a seamless pattern
- Material and texture coloring
- Materials with transparent background Alfa channel
- Creating wall stickers
- Bump mapping with the pattern of the original image

Color cards

- Create a new color card
- Convert existing material into a color card

PBR materials

To complete tasks please download the <u>Intermediate Course – Interior design – Workshop Projects 2024</u> from our website and install to your computer. This contains all projects for Intermediate workshops. You can also find the video of the presentation on the website.

 Open ..\Documents\ARCHlineXP DRAW\2024\Workshop_Intermediate\1_Material_management\1_Material management_Start.pro file.

1.1. Create new material

We will create a new material from color or texture.

1.1.1. Creating a new material from color

Frist we will choose a color from the RAL color palette and we will use it as the basis of our new material.

You can also search by name in the color palettes created by the manufacturers (RAL, Sikkens, Pantone, ...). It is sufficient to enter the partial name, but you cannot search by color code.

In the example we will choose RAL 7031 Blue Gray.

In the Design Center select the Materials - Settings - Create new material option.



Design center 📮 🗶	Floor plan Ground floor (0 mm) View 2 [Im
[Search in all items] Q \downarrow_z^A \checkmark	
A Materials	
< <back 81="" brands<="" elements="" models="" td="" =""><td></td></back>	
	Multi selection mode
	Create new material
⊞ MY	mport HQ material package
BUILDING	Create Color card
	Upload content to ARCHLine.XP Warehouse
	AL Warehouse
	Color card manager
ELECTRICAL ACCESSORIES	Delete
■ FABRICS (TEXTILE, CURTAIN, LEATHER)	Sort in categories

- Click on the color button, select the RAL color palette and type RAL 7031 in the search field.
- Click on RAL 7031 Blue Gray.

exture(albedo) Producer: Generic Render styles General Texture / Color RAL Reference ARCHLINE.XP AutoCAD Custom RAL Sikkens BOLX BOLX BOLX BOLX BOLX BOLX BOLX BOLX		58
RAL Colour tables -AutoCAD -AutoCAD -Outom -AutoCAD -Outom -BoLX -BoLX -Dulux -Pantone StoColor System -TRUMATCH Colorbond Dulux Pantone Pontore Pantone	×	58
AutoCAD - Custom - Custom - Sikkens - BOLX - Paltone - StaColor System - TRUMATCH - Cubots Woodcare - Colorboid - Dulux - Pantone - StoColor System - TRUMATCH - Resene - Components - R: 71 + H: - Components -		
Pantone - Pantone - StoColor System - TRUMATCH Colorbond - Oulux - Oulux - Othors Woodcare - Othors Pontone - Pontone - Pontone - Pontore Pantone - Pontore Pantone - Pontore Pantone - Ponters Pantone - Pont		
B: 78 + S:	146 × 75 ×	2%
	12 *	0
No Layer Upload OK	Cancel	0
Hatch on section		U
Hatch in 3D Bump / Normal - Softness		0

Select the Wall render style at the Appearance tab. The RAL color name will appear in the window.

٠

	Copy material properties Paste material pro	perties
exture(albedo)	V Producer: Generic	
	Render styles Wall	,
	Texture / Color New material Texture Brightness	80
	Position: Tile Recalculate UV mapping	;
	☆ Basic settings	
	Transparency	0%
	Metalic (Reflection)	3%
	Roughness(Blurry Reflection(Visually indistinct mirroring))	5%
Appearance		
-	A Bump / normal mapping	
l hermal parameters	Ambient Occlusion (AO)	0
BIM parameters		
Hatch on section	Bump / normal mapping	5
Hatch in 3D	Bump / Normal - Softness	5

• After pressing OK, save the material to the appropriate category:

Name of the new item in the libra	ary:	
RAI 7031		~
Category:		
COLOURS		~
Sub category:		
RAL		~
Producer:		
RAL		~
Product line		
		~
	D OK	Cancol

• Drag and drop the new material on the wall behind the sofa. Use the Like painting or grouting option.





1.1.2. Downloading material from the ARCHLine.XP Warehouse

We can use a material from the Design Center – Material library or we can download one from the ARCHLine.XP Warehouse.

We will change the material of the curtain in the living room to a material downloaded from the ARCHLine.XP Warehouse.

 Select the ARCHLine.XP Warehouse – Brands – Material – Rovitex – Denver – Denver_A_304 material and after download, drag and drop it on the curtain using the Replacing one material with another option.





Right-click on the curtain and select Find Material to view the properties of the material. For this material, for example, the Transparency is set automatically to 13%, but you may want to set it to 0%, since we are talking about a blackout curtain.

1.1.3. Downloading the texture from manufacturer's website

We can not only create a material from color but from texture as well. It is worth to select the appropriate texture from the manufacturer's website.

In our example we will use a wallpaper from JAB (<u>https://www.jab.de/de/en</u>) and we will apply it to the wall behind the sofa.

Before download we need to register on the website, and log in.

Search for the MIRAGE wallpaper and select a color:

(<u>.</u>		JAB ANSTOETZ GRO	DUP - THE DESIGN COMPANY		Contact English
JAB ANNIOLIZ GROUP CONFIGURATORS V P	RODUCTS V BRANDS V S	TOCKISTS CONTRACT		Mirage	× № ♡ ₽
	PRODUCTS (4)	MIRAGE MAR GHR1141243 CHR114	Se Milade Herstalleb	Zaslavali	

Pay attention to the "Length of repeat" value on the webpage. This will be the width of our pattern: 610mm.

JABE CONFIGURATORS V PRODUC	TS V BRANDS V STOCKISTS CONTRACT	0808
		MIRAGE © © CH9116/050 Wallcovering, Printed, Non-woven; Surface : 100% vinyl, Ground material: 100% paper
Data		DEALER SEARCH
Article name	Mirage	
Article number	CH9116/050	The product images are for illustration purposes only. We make every effort to display the colours true to the original, but we cannot guarantee that your
Colour variations	4	computer will reproduce the colours ecourately.
Brand	Chivasso	
Quality	Wallcovering, Printed, Non-woven	🖾 Contact
Material	Surface : 100% vinyl, Ground material: 100% paper	n§ Dealer Search
Notes	≃ᅦᆊᅮᆌᇏ	
Width / Height	69 cm / 27"	y urger samolé
Length of repeat	61 cm / 24*	1 Downloads
Length	1005 cm / 396"	Request certificates
Design	Graphic, Large-patterned	

In the download section, select "*Image of pattern repeat*" option. We have to specify the resolution of the pattern. It is not recommended to choose a too large resolution, because it will only increase the project size: 900 pixels.

< mirage X	< MIRAGE	×
DOWNLOADS	DOWNLOADS	
Would you like to receive further details? Here you will find all product information and media. Download the data you need free of charge.	Would you like to receive further details? Here find all product information and media. Downi data you need free of charge.	e you will load the
Image of pattern repeat V	Image of pattern repeat	~
Detailed view Image of article Image of patters repeat Ambiance shot	Media format Original format (3600 px) HD format (1800 px) Office format (900 (k) E-mail format (450 px)	~

After download we can choose

Copy image - this will place the image on the clipboard or ٠

• Save image - this will save the image file to our computer.



1.1.4. Creating new material from texture

The downloaded material is on the clipboard or is saved as an image file. We can create a new material from texture by pasting the element on the clipboard or by browsing the downloaded image file.

Select in the Design Center the Materials category, then Settings – Create new material option.



The Material properties dialog appears.

- Click on the color area on the left.
- If you have the image on the clipboard, click on the **Insert** button from the drop-down menu.
- If you have saved the image to your computer, click on the Texture button and browse it on the computer.



			Copy material properties Paste material	properties
ture(albedo)		~ Produc	cer: Generic	
		Rende	r styles General	\`
			ture / Color	
		New	material	
		Te	exture	
		Brigh	htness	58
		•		
			isical properties	
<u>v</u>	Render		n: Tile	\
4	Colour		alculate UV mapping	
	÷.		settings	1220
38	Texture		arency	0%
	Copy to clipboard			1.000
Ê	Paste		c (Reflection)	2%
	Import HQ material p	ackage	pass(Plurn, Poflaction(Visually indistinct mirroring))	10%
Appearance			ness(blarry Renection(visually indistinct minoring))	1076
		⇒ Bur	mp / normal mapping	
Thermal par	ameters	Amb	pient Occlusion (AO)	0
BIM parar	neters			
link in a		Bum	p / normal mapping	0
Hatch on s	section	-		
Hatch ir	1 3D	Bum	p / Normal - Softness	0

- On the Appearance **Physical properties** tab, type in the value of "*Length of repeat*" from the website: 610 mm as the Horizontal dimension. It is important to turn on the Keeping the X/Y ratios command first.
- It is important to choose the right Render style. You can fine-tune the parameters of the selected render style.

	Copy mate	erial properties	Paste material properties
albedo)	V Producer:	Generic	
	Render styles	Wall	
	☆ Texture / Cold	ur 🖑	
A 1278	Colour		
AN AN HEA	☑ Texture	C215FE13-DD7D-40	DAC-B0B6-7818B4591AC5.png
	590 x 522		
14	Make seaml	ess pattern	
	Merge with	color	
	Brightness	8	80
Charles Charles			
	A Physical property	erties	
VA III	Position:	Tile	
	Keeping the	X/Y ratios	
	Height:		540 m
Apparence	Width:		610 m
Abbearaire	Direction:		0°
ermal parameters	Recalculate	UV mapping	
RIM narameters			
an parameters	Transparency		0%
Hatch on section			
Hatch in 2D	Metalic (Reflec	tion)	3%
	n/ni	N - AI+: N I: II : J:	-x:x: \\ E0/
	Heln	6	OK Car

After pressing OK, name the new material and enter the appropriate category and subcategory where you want to save it.

JAB_Mirage		 ×
Category:		
WALLPAPER		~
Sub category:		
Other		~
Producer:		
JAB		`
Product line		
		~

After closing the dialog drag and drop the wallpaper on the wall behid the sofa, and select the Like painting or grouting option.



1.1.5. Downloading material from the 3D Warehouse

It is also possible to download material from the 3D Warehouse. The .skm file is a material file that SketchUp uses for texture information. It contains the raster image file, a stamp image and additional content describing how much area the image should cover. You can download the textures (skm-files) from the 3D Warehouse page directly into ARCHLine.XP.

• Select a wood material from the 3D Warehouse, download it, save it with the right name in the right place. The material will then be added to the material library.



③ 3D Warehouse				×
↔ → Ω				
3D Warehouse Get SketchU	p wood		X 🛛 🖸 🕹	A Harosi E. ✓
💮 Models & Products 📗 Catalogs	Collections Materials		<u>e</u> € Filters	Reset
365,154 Results in Materials			Relevance	~
Wood	wood	wood	WOOD	
□ 410 KB 🛷 945 x 845 px	🗅 295 KB 🥔 1024 x 960 px	🗅 804 KB 🥔 1134 x 850 px	🕒 192 KB 🥔 800 x 800 px	
4	Ŀ	Ŀ		₩ 2
Wood	WOOD	wood	Wood	
D 93 KB	🕒 391 KB 🖉 1500 x 1500 px	B 893 KB	🕒 3 MB 🛷 4000 x 4000 px	

Drag and drop the material onto the front of the kitchen cabinet.



1.2. Material properties

When creating the materials, we saw how the **physical and appearance properties** of the material can be set. These properties can be modified later.

Render styles are a great help in setting the appearance properties of materials.

Let's try different render styles for example on the dining table glass. The result is best seen in Rendering, but the difference is also visible in the Textured display mode in the 3D window. (This assumes using DirectX 11.)

For example, from the **Design Center - Catalogs - Render styles**, drag the Matte style onto the glass, and then the Mirror style then reset it to Glass.



1.3. Material/Texture editing

Textures you receive or download from the Internet may need to be readjusted so that we can use them in our project. For example, the pattern is not continuous, not a seamless pattern, so it shows a square like repetition when applied to the surfaces, or some part of the pattern is transparent in real life, or the color of the pattern may not what we want. In such cases, we need to edit the texture.

1.3.1. Creating a seamless pattern

What is a seamless pattern?

A continuous, endless pattern that shows no square like repetition in either direction when applied on a surface. "A pattern is actually a small image that, when repeated one after the other in each direction, forms a seamless pattern, and you can fill the available space with it as long as you repeat it. Because the pattern is repeatable, you don't see the image being interrupted anywhere."

With the **Create Seamless Pattern** command, it is possible to convert the imported texture to a seamless pattern (endless pattern). This means that the pattern row and column become continuous. This makes it possible to edit the texture within ARCHLine.XP and we do not have to use an external image editing program. The pattern edited this way can be saved as



material and may be used in the model immediately. By using seamless patterns, we can avoid that for example the wallpaper applied to the wall looks like a "checkered tablecloth".

- Let's create a material from the **Dandelion.jpg** texture from the ...\Material management\Textures folder, and use it on the wall behind the sofa. In the image, we can see that it is not a seamless pattern.
- Let's place the material from the Design Center on the floor plan as a raster image.





• Click on the pattern and from its local menu select the Edit – Make seamless pattern option.



By clicking on one of the sides of the pattern, the program complete the pattern into a 3x3 pattern. Move the cursor til the pattern is overlapping

Repeat it with the other side, then Enter. The seamless pattern is ready.

- The command can only be used with textures that has a repetition.
 - Save the seamless pattern as a material: Choose the Resave Material. The material in the "In Model" category will then be overwritten with the new material and the model will display the modified seamless pattern material on the wall.



• It is worth copy material in the In Model category back into the category, overwriting the original material.







Create a seamless pattern from a non-repeating pattern

If you find material on the Internet that is not a repetitive pattern, proceed as follows:

- Let's create a material from the **Abstract2.jpg** texture from the ...\Material management\Textures folder, based on the previous steps, and place it on the floor plan as a raster image.
- Now click on the pattern and from the Local menu, select Edit Make seamless pattern quad command. The program will then mirror the pattern on the X and Y axes, giving you a seamless pattern. Save the seamless pattern using the Save as material command, then you can use the material Like painting or grouting as usual.





1.3.2. Resizing and rotating textures in 3D

A texture is globally mapped to a surface in the world coordinate system, independent of the object coordinates. This means that the texture does not stick to any object, but is fixed to the global origin, so that the texture remains untouched by the transformation (resizing, rotation) within the object, and does not move relative to the global origin. However, if the object is moved or transformed, the texture moves with the geometry of the object.

It is possible to graphically resize and rotate the texture by selecting the surface in the 3D model. This option is shown on the kitchen cabinet. First, we replace the front with the material of the worktop to make the example more demonstrative.

- Select Kitchen 2 perspective.
- Replace the front material with 95_walnut light wood fine material.



• Start the Interior menu - Material - Scaling Texture and click on the front interface.

The command displays how the texture is currently mapped onto the surface.



When resizing, the program stretches the texture in the direction in which one of its sides is modified. It is also possible to modify it proportionally.



• Resize the texture graphically: reduce the height of the texture.



Now we will change the grain direction:

• Select the Local menu - Modify texture - Rotate texture - Rotate 90 cw option, and click on the front surface. You can rotate by +90, -90, and 180 degrees.



1.3.3. Coloring material and texture

How can we use the same material or texture with different color alternatives in ARCHLine.XP? It is possible to add a background color to a material or texture, so we will have another color alternative.

Coloring material

The Adding Color option can be turned on at the material properties. Click the Color button to select the appropriate color from the color tables. The added background color can be turned off at any time, this is just a property of the material, it does not affect the texture.

The advantage is that you can try many color variations quickly, the result is immediately visible in the 3D model.



• Turn off the Merge with color option.

Coloring texture

The pattern on the floor plan can be recolored using the *Local menu* – *Edit* – *Recoloring image* option. After that the texture can be saved as a material.

In contrast to the Material Coloring method, we create textures that are actually recolored here, as well as the materials saved from them. The disadvantage is that the result will only appear in the model later when these textures are used as material.



1.3.4. Materials with transparent background – Alfa channel

We might need an image with a transparent background. Such an image for example is a wall sticker. We also use a transparent image when we want to display a patterned but transparent curtain.

The solution is the ALFA channel. This means that we can mark the colors on the image that are transparent.

Let's create images with transparent backgrounds:



Transparent, patterned curtain

- From the \Material management\Textures folder, place POLINA 44 ANTHRACITE SABLE.jpg on the floor plan.
- Select Local menu Edit Make a picture transparent option.
- Highlight the color in the image you want to make transparent with the eyedropper, in this case grey, the background color.
- Specify the level of transparency: 180.

Onaque			Transnar	rent	
opuque		-	Tunopu	= 1	30
			ОК		Cancel
				3	

• Save the texture as a material using Local menu - Save - Save as material

Name of the new item in the library:	
POLINA 44 ANTHRACITE SABLE	~
Category:	
FABRICS (TEXTILE, CURTAIN, LEATHER)	~
Sub category:	
Curtain	~
Producer:	
Szintetika	~
Product line	
Polina	~

- The Render styles should be General. Set the physical size of the sample: 200 x 350 mm
- Drag it onto the curtain.



Create a wall sticker

- Place the Abstract_wood.jpg on the floor plan from the ...\Material management\Textures folder.
- Select the Local menu Edit Make a picture transparent option.
- Select the color you want to make transparent with the eyedropper tool. Here the white.



• Set the level of transparency: 255. OK.

SNa Raster image (316) [1/1] >>> Properties. Select Copy properties Ceate similar Delete Phase Phase Find material Locate item in Design Center Calibrate Chip the image Find material Locate item in Design Center Calibrate Chip the image Find material Locate item in Design Center Calibrate Belcad 3D Define orthogonal view Save Save Convert image to grayscale Generate normal map Invert color Make seamless pattern Make seamless pattern quad								
Properties Select Create similar Delete Phase Pase Find material Locate item in Design Center Calibrate Calibrate Edit Save Save Save Save Save Save Beload 3D Draw Order Group parameters Layer Convert image to grayscale Generate normal map Invert color Make seamless pattern Make seamless pattern Make seamless pattern Make seamless pattern	5_Na		Raster image (316) [1/1] >>>	Föld	szint (0 m) *			
Select Copy properties Create similar Pase Phase Pase Calibrate Calibrate Clip the image Frame/Show Define orthogonal view Save 3D Calibrate Convert image to grasscale Generate normal map Invert color Make seamless pattern Make seamless pattern Make seamless pattern			Properties					
Copy properties Create similar Delete Phase Phase Calibrate			Select	•				
Create similar Delete Phase Find material Locate item in Design Center Calibrate Calibrate Cit Citip the image Frame/Show Define orthogonal view Save 30 Define orthogonal view Save Becoloring image Draw Order Group parameters Layer Convert image to grayscale Generate normal map Invert color Make seamless pattern Make seamless pattern Make seamless pattern		1	Copy properties					
Pelete Phase Find material Locate item in Design Center Calibrate Save 3D Convert image to grayscale Generate normal map Invert color Invert color Make seamless pattern Make seamless pattern Make seamless pattern		0	Create similar					
Phase Find material Locate item in Design Center Calibrate Cilp the image Frame/Show Define orthogonal view Save Save Bo Draw Order Group parameters Layer Convert image to grayscale Generate normal map Invert color Make seamless pattern Make seamless pattern Make seamless pattern quad		×	Delete					
Find material Locate item in Design Center Calibrate Cdit Calibrate Cig the image Frame/Show Define orthogonal view Save Save Daw Order Group parameters Layer Invert color Make seamless pattern Make seamless pattern Make seamless pattern			Phase	•				
Locate item in Design Center Calibrate Edit Clip the image Frame/Show Define orthogonal view Save 3D Draw Order Group parameters Layer Convert image to grayscale Generate normal map Invert color Make seamless pattern Make seamless pattern Make seamless pattern quad		P	Find material					
Calibrate Cilp the image Frame/Show Define orthogonal view Save Save Draw Order Group parameters Layer Convert image to grayscale Generate normal map Invert color Make seamless pattern Make seamless pattern Make seamless pattern Make seamless pattern		R	Locate item in Design Center					
Edit Image			Calibrate					
Clip the image Frame/Show Define orthogonal view Save Save Parme/Show Define orthogonal view Save Parme/Show Define orthogonal view Save Draw Order Group parameters Layer Convert image to grayscale Generate normal map Clip the image Frame/Show Define orthogonal view Save Draw Order Group parameters Layer Convert image to grayscale Generate normal map Clip the image Convert image to grayscale Generate normal map Clip the image Convert image to grayscale Convert image to gr		(and	Edit	12	Scale	1		
Frame/Show +++ Stretch Define orthogonal view +++ Fijp Save ++ Reload 3D ++ Reload Draw Order ++ Reload Group parameters ++ Convert image to grayscale Generate normal map ++ Invert color Invert color ++ Make seamless pattern Make seamless pattern ++ OK			Clip the image	-Ľ	J Scale			
Define orthogonal view Flip Save Recloaring image Draw Order Recoloring image Draw Order Make a picture transparent Layer Convert image to grayscale Generate normal map Invert color Make seamless pattern Make seamless pattern Make seamless pattern Make seamless pattern			Frame/Show	+¦ ¦	 Stretch 			
Save Reload 3D Recoloring image Draw Order Make a picture transparent Group parameters Convert image to grayscale Generate normal map Invert color Make seamless pattern Make seamless pattern Make seamless pattern			Define orthogonal view		Flip +			
30 Recoloring image Draw Order Make a picture transparent Group parameters Convert image to grayscale Generate normal map Invert color Make seamless pattern Make seamless pattern Make seamless pattern OK			Save	•	Reload	1		
Draw Order Group parameters Layer Convert image to grayscale Generate normal map Invert color Make seamless pattern Make seamless pattern quad Make seamless pattern quad			3D		Recoloring image	1		
Group parameters Layer Covert image to grayscale Generate normal map Invert color Make seamless pattern Make seamless pattern quad			Draw Order				Level of transparency	
Layer Convert image to grayscale Generate normal map Invert color Make seamless pattern Make seamless pattern quad			Group parameters		Make a picture transparent			
Generate normal map Invert color Make seamless pattern Make seamless pattern quad			Layer	-	Convert image to grayscale			
Invert color Image: State of the search o		5		۵	Generate normal map		Opaque	Transp
Image: Make seamless pattern Image: Make seamless pattern quad				0	Invert color			
1 Make seamless pattern quad				25	Make seamless pattern			OK
				25	Make seamless pattern quad			UK

- Save it as a material, then choose which wall you want to place it on.
- You can do this with the Picture on wall command, which you first set the properties of the command. Choose Interior Properties Picture on wall command.
- Here, turn off the frame and the matting, and in the Image parameters, specify the previously created Abstract_wood
 material as the Material.

icture on wall			
	Visualization		
	Colour		
	Layer	Gerenda	~
	Line weights	0 mm	~
	Line type	Simple Line	~
	Draw Order	8- Bottom-most	\sim
	Properties of placement		
	Base offset from the floor	2 m	
	Image parameters		
	Material	🛞 Abstract_wood_saját	
	Keeping the X/Y ratios		
	Width	0.8 m	
	Height	1.2 m	
	Frame depth	0.002 m	
ame properties	A Matting parameters		
Enabled	Enabled		
BRONZE BLACK	Width	0.05 m	
• • • •	Colour		
ame Value	A Glass		
Vidth [0 - n.a. m] 0.05	Enabled		
	Material	Glass26	
Profile from Library			
No style	ОК		Cance

• Place the sticker on the wall using the Interior - Single object - Picture on wall instruction.



1.3.5. Bump mapping – with the pattern of the original image

By adding bump map to a texture, we can create a 3D depth. We call it bump mapping.

Bump mapping

Bump Mapping makes the appearance of surfaces uneven, creating a much more realistic effect. During the procedure, a more uneven surface is created by freely modifying the direction of the normal vectors of the model, thus creating the illusion of a more complex, uneven surface. These normal vectors are stored in a texture. These textures are called **Normal Map**. It corresponds to the RGB 3 color (red, green, blue) of the 3 axes of the coordinate system, so that the blue color falls on the axis pointing towards us. Therefore, Normal Maps are mostly bluish.



The bump map of a material can be set 3 ways in the Material properties:

- Automatic by the texture of the material
- By selecting a built-in Normal map from the list
- By using our own Normal map texture

In the following examples, use the Realistic representation to display the 3D window.



Automatic bump mapping by the texture of the material

For materials with texture, if the scale factor is other than 0, a normal map is automatically added, creating the illusion of a 3D effect. The surface roughness must always be corrected by smoothing the roughness, otherwise a too rough effect is obtained.

Specifying a surface roughness with a scale factor only makes sense on a suitable texture, on a color based pattern it is meaningless.

- Select the *Building Brick Blockwork* material and drag it to the wall between the kitchen cabinet and the front door with the *Replacing one material with another on this object* option.
- Try the values below.



Bump mapping with built-in Normal map texture

Normal Map texture can be used on texture based material or on color based material. Normal Map textures can be built-in textures, or you can specify your own Normal Map texture pattern. The built-in Normal Map textures can be selected from the list below:



Built-in Normal map on texture based material

Transform the Dadelion wallpaper material into a rough wallpaper effect:

• Turn off the merge with color option. Now the wallpaper looks like this:



• From the list, select *Wallpaper - Splash* built-in normal map. The result:





Built-in Normal map on color based material

It is also possible to assign a built-in normal map to a color based material to create a 3D surface effect. In this case, the color position must be set from stretched to mosaic. A texture size is then assigned to the color. This size will affect the appearance of the normal map. Let's try it out:

• Replace the fabric of the sofa with e.g. RAL coldgrey



- Set the built-in Leather surface to normal map.
- Select *Tile* position instead of Stretch. For a size of 800 x 800 mm, we get the following result:



Try it with 400 x 400 mm:



• Also set the bump mapping of the material of the chairs as well. Use Striated Stucco - Vertical built-in normal map.



When modifying textures in 3D, we modify the properties of the original material.

1.4. Color cards

The purpose of a color card is to make the color or texture selection on the 3D model easier, without modifying the plan. The house or flat can be displayed in a new color just by one click.

We can create a color card 2 ways:

- 1. Create a new color card
- 2. Create a color card from an existing material. In the Design Center Project folder select the material that we want to transform to a color card. Then select the **Create a copy as a color card** option by clicking on the cogwheel icon.

First we create a color card for the living room wallpapers, starting from the Dandelion wallpaper.


In the color card manager dialog:

• Change its name: Living room wallpaper. Add new materials. These will be the wallpaper variations. You can also delete material here.

_
Color card manager
Name of the new material:
Living room wallpaper
Category:
COLOR CARD
Sub category:
Other
Producer:
generic
(Use \ to organize into tree-structure eg: Myroom\Furniture)
Current:
Dandelion_seamless
Name Dandelion_seamless Cassolo Cassolo light
The Color card is a collector of real material and displays the currently selected material. You can list any number of materials in the list. It has the advantage that different versions of the same 3D model can be presented by selecting another element in the list without changing the project. If materials are directly linker to walls, windows, furniture, etc., then their modifications will not affect the 3D model in general. YOU CAN APPLY MATERIALS IN THE PROJECT CATEGORY ONLY.
OK Cancel

When you modify the current material, the program automatically replaces the entire 3D model with the new one. Attention, the name of the material will not change!

• Drag and drop the color card (Living room wallpaper) on the wall behind the sofa.



From now on, the materials of the 3D model can be changed to the materials on the color card.

• Click on the color card icon in the upper left corner and select the new material in the appearing dialog.



Repeat it for the material of the sofa. Now we have two color cards.



After that the color cards can be organized into styles so the different variations can be displayed immediately.

• Select the In Model library – Settings – Color card manager.

•



Create 3 variations.

Select the sofa fabric and living room wallpaper you want to see in a version, then click on the gear to save it as New Style. Repeat this as many times as you want to make as many versions as you like.

	Properties	and the second	×		
The second of the second s	Color cards				
	Living r	oom variation 3	¢		S TO ALL
R BREAKS CONSIGNALIES	Property	Value		(A) Share	or anti all and
La TUN CARENA LINN SALEDAY	Living room wallpaper	Cassolo light		A State State	
	Sofa material	eggshell			
	-				1 C
	2000		an		

When you are done, you can open these styles in the same place. Select the first version, and after pressing OK, the
program will automatically generate the new 3D view.

Co	olor cards		
		Variations3	10
- T	- Variations1	-63	
	Variations2		

You can also activate a color card style from Styles by dragging the style onto the drawing and selecting activation.





1.5. PBR materials

PBR materials open a new world to realism thanks to the channels being not only colors for reflection, transparency and roughness channels for example, but allowing designers to use a wide range of ready to use textures for these too from extremely rich and continuously growing online sources. PBR means Physically Based Rendering and allows to simulate existing materials as realistic as possible under all lighting conditions.

• These materials are available in ARCHLine.XP under **Design Center - HQ Materials**. Here, a number of materials are already pre-saved with a diamond symbol in the bottom right corner indicating that they are PBR materials.



• In the material setting, you can see that Metallic (Reflection), Roughness and Bumb mapping can be specified not only by values but also by textures. This makes PBR materials much more detailed and realistic than "normal" materials.

<back< th=""><th></th></back<>	
Merge with color	
Brightness	90
0	-
Physical properties	
Position: Tile	e 🖂
Keeping the X/Y ratios	
Height:	2000 mm
Width:	2000 mm
Direction:	0°
Directori	0
Basic settings Metalic (Reflection)	40%
Basic settings Metalic (Reflection) Roughness(Blurry Reflection)	40% (Visually i 5%
Subsection: Sasic settings Metalic (Reflection) Roughness(Blurry Reflection) Bump / normal mapping Ambiest Occlusion (AQ)	40% (Visually i 5%
Basic settings Metalic (Reflection) Roughness(Blurry Reflection) Bump / normal mapping Ambient Occlusion (AO)	40% (Visually i 5%
	40% (Visually i 5% 0
Sasic settings Metalic (Reflection) Roughness(Blurry Reflection) Bump / normal mapping Ambient Occlusion (AO) Bump / normal mapping Bum	40% (Visually i 5% 0
Subsection: Section:	(Visually i 5% 0
Section: Se	(Visually i 5% 0 10

 Another advantage is that you can access these materials from a huge and constantly growing database. By choosing Interior - Material - Download, the program redirects you to the PBR material library of ARCHLine.XP, where you can find a list of where to download additional PBR materials.



ARCH INE. 🕏



• Go to ambientCG, where you can find a range of textures under Materials. Search for 'wood' and download a sample of your choice. There are several resolutions to choose from, but we recommend that you do not use a resolution higher than 1K-2K. If you choose a higher resolution, it may slow down your work considerably.



- After downloading the .zip file, drag and drop the zipped folder into the Design Center of ARCHLine.XP (on the left
- sidebar) without unzipping it.
 The program then pops up the material properties, where you can set the following: *Render styles – Parquet Texture (albedo): 55*
- If necessary, the reflection, roughness, refraction and bump mapping of the material can also be adjusted here.
- Save the material after pressing OK:

WoodFloor057_1K		~
Category:		
PARQUET		\sim
Sub category:		
Strips		~
Producer:		
generic		~

• In Design Centre - HQ materials or Design Centre - Recently created content - Materials, select the material you just saved, then place it on the floor as usual Like painting or grouting.

For more useful information on material management, watch this video: ARCHLine.XP Materials

Workshop 2: Visual design



2. Workshop: Visual design

Created by Krisztina Hárosi

First of all, we need to answer one question.

Why is photorealistic rendering important?

One of the most common ways of communicating in today's modern world is through images. You only have to think of the various social networking sites, we communicate with each other almost exclusively through pictures. This is also mostly the case in interior design. Often our clients prefer to look at a visual image rather than a drawing or a section. A good render will help you to visualize the interior design, answering many questions/doubts:

"Will the materials and colors I choose look good in my living room? Will my client like the lights? Will they light the room well enough? And the accessories? What will she/he think of them?".

These are questions that can be answered positively with a well-done render image.

So why is photorealistic rendering important? Because we can capture the heart of our client with a sophisticated visual image. The interior will feel like their own.

Let's look at these two pictures taken in the same room. In the first image (image 1), the materials are not set up yet, I didn't use render styles, excessive use of sun and artificial lights, poor perspective, few test renders and short render times.

The second image (image 2) required more time, many test renders and longer render times, but if we put the two images in front of our client, which one would have the greater impact?



Image 1.



Image 2.

To achieve the quality of image 2 in our renderings, we need to learn to create photorealistic images. You have to learn to deal with lights and shadows, know the physical properties of the materials, find the ideal point of view, and build up a photorealistic image that looks realistic, step by step.

In this tutorial, I will show you the main steps of rendering using a simple living room example. From setting the viewpoint to the final render, we will see in detail what values to add in this project and what to look out for to avoid the main mistakes. The result will be the image shown above.

The tutorial video assumes a basic knowledge of rendering, which you can learn in the <u>Preliminary Course - Rendering</u> workshop.

To complete tasks please download the <u>Intermediate Course – Interior design – Workshop Projects 2024</u> from our website and install to your computer. This contains all projects for Intermediate workshops. You can also find the video of the presentation on the website.

If you feel like it, first create a render with the default settings and save it, so you can compare the two images at the end of the process. It's also a good idea to save the test renders so you can track the progress of the image. In the tutorial, we will follow the steps below:

- 1) Viewpoint setting
- 2) Sun position
- 3) Material options Render styles
- 4) Artificial lights
- 5) Final render image
- Open the ..\Documents\ARCHlineXP DRAW\2024\ Workshop_Intermediate\2_Visual_Design\ Harosi_Krisztina_Render_Start.pro file.

2.1. Viewpoint setting

We often overlook the right perspective. Perhaps the main mistake you see in interior renders is that the creator wants to show as much as possible in a picture: usually setting the perspective from a corner, diagonally (so the scene will look insignificant) or from the top down (so it will look smaller) and with a high camera angle (so the scene will look deformed) to fit everything in.

49



Scene with wrong viewpoint setting

Let's look at the basic rules for setting a good perspective:

Set the viewpoint perpendicular to the opposite wall at a height of 1-1.4 m so that the camera is at the same height as the point of view. This will make the scene of the picture more pronounced, resembling a professional photographer's image.

In the perspective dialogue window:

- Set the height of the camera and the object to between 1.1-1.4 m.
- Camera angle should be between 50° and 70°, otherwise the scene will be distorted. Choose 60°.
- Position the camera opposite the back wall.



Scene with good point of view setting

Of course, this is not a rule that cannot be "broken". If necessary, from this position, you can take small steps to turn towards the corner (while making test renders), but don't overdo it.



Render image with turned viewpoint

When setting the viewpoint, adjust the position of the camera and object: Camera position - X: 0.594, Y: 5.809, Z: 1.095 Subject position - X: 0.594, Y: -0.207, 1.095

Save the setting by clicking on the Save setting icon.



At this point you can also adjust the size of the image. Of course, here it's only at a low resolution. In the rendering settings, in the Standalone Rendering window, set the Resolution to 854x480. Choose the Preview render in real time and the Cloudy daylight sky.

Resolution	854x480 (Widescreen 16:9)	~
Render presets	Preview render in real time	~
Samples per pixel (anti-aliasing)	1	V
Renderpass count	30	~
Sharper details	~	
Enable artificial lights		
Scaling of artificial lighting	100 %	~
Sunlight	Cloudy daylight	~
Use IES Light in all spotlights.		
Choose IES	Edit	
Date and time	26 January 12:00 (Daylight)	
Background	Panorama	~
Panorama	Hills in the distance	~
Panorama direction	0	~
Specify a folder to save render i	D:\ARCHlineXP Draw\2024\Render\Render	_AK\
Background brightness	100 Brighter, daytime scenes	~
Background brightness	100 Brighter, daytime scenes	
Background brightness	100 Brighter, daytime scenes	node
Background brightness	100 Brighter, daytime scenes	node

Start the rendering. Save the first render image: Render_01.

Don't turn off the Render window, so you can see the real-time image following the changes.

- Turn on the Render frame in the View Rendering menu.
- Maximize view in 3D to see which parts of the scene are rendering.

It's a good idea to leave this on as you work, so that if you use a new viewpoint or modify an existing one, you can keep track of what you'll see in the render.

2.2. Sun position

After setting the right viewpoint, try several sun positions, compare the results and choose the best one. Some like a late autumnal late afternoon sun setting with longer shadows, others like a high sun setting in the summer after lunch. Choose the sun setting that works best for you, but make sure it creates a contrast between light and shadow. For example, don't brighten the whole scene by having the light come from behind the camera, or choose a sun setting so low from the eye that it illuminates the whole interior. Try to find a good light/shadow balance.

	(*		360
	Ren	dering	Sun	Shadow	Panorama 360
-	R	Regist	ration		
100	0	Standa	alone ren	dering	
		Standa	alone ren	dering - real	time draft
	0	Integra	ated rend	lering	
		Integra	ated rend	lering - realt	ime draft
	B	Rende	r-frame o	on/off	
		ARCHI	Line.XP LI	VE	





Example: too low sun exposure from the front, date: 26 January 12:00

- On the Dashboard, turn on the shadow and set the date: 17 May 15:00
- Set the North direction to 225°



The result is directly displayed in the real-time draft render. If you don't like the result, look for another sun position.

- Save the second render image: Render_02
- Once you have set the correct sun position, turn off the real-time draft render and turn off the shadow.

Compare the 1st and 2nd render images:



1st render

2nd render

2.3. Material Options - Render Styles

Before we get into this not at all easy subject, I would like to give you some general advice on choosing the right texture and setting the material.

Always use high quality textures. These can be found in the ARCHLine.XP Showroom or downloaded from various websites, but make sure you choose images with a medium resolution, about 400x400 pixels, but this depends on the actual size of the texture. For example, if it's a poster covering a whole wall, choose a higher resolution image. It is important that the textures are seamless. If they are not, they should be converted into a seamless pattern either in ARCHLine.XP or in an image editing program, if possible.

If you want a really good rendering, not only assign the right render styles to the objects, but also take the time to fine tune the parameters of the materials while checking the settings with test renders.

During test renders, it is possible that the color of some materials, e.g., wood, may become too dominant and affect the surroundings, e.g. walls (Image 1), so it is recommended to desaturate them somewhat in an external program such as Photoshop, Gimp, Lightroom, etc. (Image 2).



Image 1



Image 2

2.3.1. Material adjustment on architectural elements - Phase 1

In the first phase, only the architectural model is displayed, which is located on the "Murature Base" layer in the example project. Switch off all other layers. Rebuild the 3D model.





Using render styles

Use the drag and drop method to assign appropriate render styles to these main elements. Wall for the wall, parquet for the parquet, metal for the metal door and glass for the glass.





Before fine-tuning the material settings, let's create the first standalone test render. In the **Standalone Render** window, set a medium resolution and Q1 preset with the following parameters:

Resolution 1280x720 (Widescreen 16:9 - HD) V Render presets Q1 - Quick preview image V Samples per pixel (anti-aliasing) 2 V Renderpass count 30 V Sharper details V V Enable artificial lightis Image: Cloudy daylight V Scaling of artificial lighting 100 % V Sunlight Cloudy daylight V Use IES Light in all spotlights. Image: Cloudy daylight V Date and time 17 May 15:00 (Daylight) Eackground Panorama Hills in the distance V Panorama direction 0 V Specify a folder to save render I D:\ARCHIneXP Draw\2024\Render\Render_Render_AK\ Background brightness 100 Brighter, daytime scenes V Start Rendering Inherit background from 3D mode Rendered Frame on/off Change to the default V Change to the default V	Photorealistic Rendering		
Render presets Q1 - Quick preview image ✓ Samples per pixel (anti-aliasing) 2 ✓ Renderpass count 30 ✓ Sharper details ✓ ✓ Enable artificial lights ✓ ✓ Scaling of artificial lighting 100 % ✓ Sunlight Cloudy daylight ✓ Use IES Light in all spotlights. ✓ ✓ Date and time 17 May 15:00 (Daylight) ✓ Background Panorama ✓ Panorama Hills in the distance ✓ Panorama direction 0 ✓ Specify a folder to save render i D:\ARCHlineXP Draw\2024\Render\Render_AR\ Background brightness 100 Brighter, daytime scenes ✓ Inherit background from 3D mode Rendered Frame on/off Change to the default Start Rendering Change to the default ✓	Resolution	1280x720 (Widescreen 16:9 - HD)	~
Samples per pixel (anti-aliasing) 2 Renderpass count 30 Sharper details Enable artificial lights Scaling of artificial lighting 100 % Sunlight Cloudy daylight Use IES Light in all spotlights. Choose IES Edit Date and time 17 May 15:00 (Daylight) Background Panorama Panorama Hills in the distance Panorama 0 Specify a folder to save render i D:\ARCHlineXP Draw\2024\Render\Render_AK\ Background brightness 100 Brighter, daytime scenes Start Rendering Start Rendering Change to the default Tinherit background from 3D mode Rendered Frame on/off Change to the default Tinherit background from 3D mode Rendered Frame on/off Change to the default Tinherit background from 3D mode Rendered Frame on/off Change to the default Tinherit background from 3D mode Rendered Frame on/off Change to the default Tinherit background from 3D mode Rendered Frame on/off Change to the default Tinherit background from 3D mode Rendered Frame on/off Change to the default Tinherit background from 3D mode Rendered Frame on/off Change to the default Tinherit background from 3D mode Rendered Frame on/off Change to the default Tinherit background from 3D mode Rendered Frame on/off Change to the default Tinherit background from 3D mode Rendered Frame on/off Change to the default Tinherit background from 3D mode Rendered Frame on/off Change to the default Tinherit background from 3D mode Rendered Frame on/off Change to the default Tinherit background from 3D mode Rendered Frame on/off Change to the default Tinherit background from 3D mode Rendered Frame on/off Change to the default Tinherit background from 3D mode Rendered Frame on/off Change to the default Tinherit background from 3D mode Change to the d	Render presets	Q1 - Quick preview image	~
Renderpass count 30 Sharper details Image: Scaling of artificial lighting 100 % Scaling of artificial lighting 100 % Image: Scaling of artificial lighting Sunlight Cloudy daylight Image: Scaling of artificial lighting Sunlight Cloudy daylight Image: Scaling of artificial lighting Sunlight Cloudy daylight Image: Scaling of artificial lighting Use IES Light in all spotlights. Image: Scaling of artificial lighting Image: Scaling of artificial lighting Date and time 17 May 15:00 (Daylight) Image: Scaling of artificial lighting Image: Scaling of artificial lighting Panorama Hills in the distance Image: Scaling of artificial lighting Image: Scaling of artificial lighting Panorama Hills in the distance Image: Scaling of artificial lighting Image: Scaling of artificial lighting Start Rendering Image: Scaling of artificial lighting Image: Scaling of artificial lighting Image: Scaling of artificial lighting Start Rendering Image: Scaling of artificial lighting Image: Scaling of artificial lighting Image: Scaling of artificial lighting Start Rendering Image: Scaling of artificial lighting Image: Scaling of artificial lighting Image: Sc	Samples per pixel (anti-aliasing)	2	~
Sharper details Enable artificial lights Scaling of artificial lighting 100 % Sunlight Cloudy daylight Use IES Light in all spotlights. Choose IES Edit Date and time 17 May 15:00 (Daylight) Background Panorama Hills in the distance Panorama direction 0 Specify a folder to save render i D:\ARCHlineXP Draw\2024\Render\Render_AK\ Background brightness 100 Brighter, daytime scenes Start Rendering Inherit background from 3D mode Rendered Frame on/off Change to the default	Renderpass count	30	\sim
Enable artificial lights Scaling of artificial lighting 100 % Sunlight Cloudy daylight Use IES Light in all spotlights. Choose IES Edit Date and time 17 May 15:00 (Daylight) Background Panorama Hills in the distance Panorama direction 0 Specify a folder to save render i D:\ARCHlineXP Draw\2024\Render\Render_AK\ Background brightness 100 Brighter, daytime scenes Start Rendering Inherit background from 3D mode Rendered Frame on/off Change to the default	Sharper details	~	
Scaling of artificial lighting 100 % Sunlight Cloudy daylight Use IES Light in all spotlights. Choose IES Date and time 17 May 15:00 (Daylight) Background Panorama Panorama Hills in the distance Panorama Panorama O Specify a folder to save render i D:\ARCHlineXP Draw\2024\Render\Render_AK\ Background brightness 100 Brighter, daytime scenes Inherit background from 3D mode Rendered Frame on/off Change to the default	Enable artificial lights		
Sunlight Cloudy daylight ✓ Use IES Light in all spotlights. Edit Choose IES Edit Date and time 17 May 15:00 (Daylight) Background Panorama ✓ Panorama Hills in the distance ✓ Panorama 0 ✓ Panorama direction 0 ✓ Specify a folder to save render i D:\ARCHlineXP Draw\2024\Render\Render_AK\ Background brightness 100 Brighter, daytime scenes ✓ Image: Start Rendering Inherit background from 3D mode Rendered Frame on/off Change to the default Timerit background from 3D mode	Scaling of artificial lighting	100 %	~
Use IES Light in all spotlights. Choose IES Date and time 17 May 15:00 (Daylight) Background Panorama Hills in the distance Panorama direction 0 Specify a folder to save render i D:\ARCHlineXP Draw\2024\Render\Render_AK\ Background brightness 100 Brighter, daytime scenes	Sunlight	Cloudy daylight	~
Choose IES Edit Date and time 17 May 15:00 (Daylight) Background Panorama Panorama Hills in the distance Panorama direction 0 Specify a folder to save render i D:\ARCHlineXP Draw\2024\Render\Render_AK\ Background brightness 100 Brighter, daytime scenes	Use IES Light in all spotlights.		
Date and time 17 May 15:00 (Daylight) Background Panorama ✓ Panorama Hills in the distance ✓ Panorama direction 0 ✓ Specify a folder to save render i D:\ARCHlineXP Draw\2024\Render\Render_AK\ Background brightness 100 Brighter, daytime scenes ✓ Image: Start Rendering Inherit background from 3D mode Rendered Frame on/off Change to the default Change to the default Time	Choose IES	Edit	
Background Panorama ✓ Panorama Hills in the distance ✓ Panorama direction 0 ✓ Specify a folder to save render i D:\ARCHlineXP Draw\2024\Render\Render_AK\ Background brightness 100 Brighter, daytime scenes ✓ Image: Comparison of the start rendering ✓ Image: Comparison of the start rendering ✓ Image: Comparison of the start rendering Inherit background from 3D model Rendered Frame on/off Change to the default Change to the default Tite	Date and time	17 May 15:00 (Daylight)	
Panorama Hills in the distance Panorama direction 0 Specify a folder to save render i D:\ARCHlineXP Draw\2024\Render\Render_AK\ Background brightness 100 Brighter, daytime scenes Image: Comparison of the start rendering Image: Comparison of the start rendering Image: Comparison of the start rendering	Background	Panorama	~
Panorama direction 0 ✓ Specify a folder to save render i D:\ARCHlineXP Draw\2024\Render\Render_AK\ Background brightness 100 Brighter, daytime scenes ✓ Image: Start Rendering Inherit background from 3D mode Rendered Frame on/off Change to the default Change to the default Image: Start Rendering	Panorama	Hills in the distance	~
Specify a folder to save render i D:\ARCHlineXP Draw\2024\Render\Render_AK\ Background brightness 100 Brighter, daytime scenes 100 Brighter, daytime scenes Interit background from 3D mode Rendered Frame on/off Change to the default	Panorama direction	0	~
Background brightness 100 Brighter, daytime scenes	Specify a folder to save render i	D:\ARCHlineXP Draw\2024\Render\Ren	der_AK\
Start Rendering Change to the default			
Change to the default	Start Rendering	Inherit background from 3 Rendered Frame on,	D model /off
		Change to the defa	ult



3rd render: without fine-tuning the materials

• Save the third render image: Render_03

Next, fine-tune the materials as shown in the following images:

Wall:

56

Name	Stucco2	Copy material properties Paste material p	roperties
exture(albed)o)	Colour Texture stucco2.jpg 64 x 64	
		□ Make seamless pattern	
		Merge with color	
		Brightness	70
		Physical properties	
		Transparency	0%
		Metalic (Reflection)	0%
		Roughness(Blurry Reflection(Visually indistinct mirroring))	0%
	Appearance		
	Thermal parameters	Ambient Occlusion (AO)	0
	BIM parameters		
		Bump / normal mapping	3
	Hatch on section		
	Hatch in 3D	Bump / Normal - Softness	10

Parquet:

Name	174_parquet medium_DIFFkri2	Copy material properties Paste material pr	operties
exture(albed	0)	 Colour 	
		Texture 174 parquet medium ipg	
		3072 v 3072	STATES OF A
		SOLE ASOL	
		Make reamlers nattern	Carrow Bill
		Merce with color	
		Brightness	60
			
		Physical properties	
		Transparency	0%
		Metalic (Reflection)	15%
		P7	
		Roughness(Blurry Reflection(Visually indistinct mirroring))	15%
	Annearance		
	Арреонное	Rump / normal manning	
	Thermal parameters	Ambient Occlusion (AO)	0
	BIM parameters		F
	Hatch on soction	Bump / normai mapping	5
	Hater on Sector		
	Hatch in 3D	Bump / Normal - Softness	10

Door frame:

Name	ALUBRIGHT-02	Copy material properties Paste material prop	erties
exture(albed	0)	Producer: Generic	
		Render styles Metal	
		☆ Texture / Color	
		Colour	
		Texture	
		Brightness	20
		Position: Tile	
		Recalculate UV mapping	
		Metalic (Reflection)	5%
		Roughness(Blurry Reflection(Visually indistinct mirroring))	105
		A Bump / normal mapping	
	Appearance	Ambient Occlusion (AO)	0
	i nermai parameters	Bump / normal mapping	0
	BIM parameters		
		Bump / Normal - Softness	0
	Hatch on section		
	Hatch in 3D		
		Help OK	Cance

Door glass:

Name	Glass26	Copy material properties Paste material prop	erties
Texture(albed	0)	V Producer: Generic	
		Render styles Glass	
		☆ Texture / Color	
		Colour	
		Texture	
		Brightness	85
		0	<u> </u>
		 Physical properties 	-
		Basic settings	
		Transparency	92%
			_
		Metalic (Reflection)	0%
		Roughness(Blurry Reflection(Visually indistinct mirroring))	0%
		Rump (normal mapping	
	Appearance	Ambient Occlusion (AO)	0
	Thermal parameters	Rump (normal mapping	0
	RIM parameters		0
	bin parameters		0
	Hatch on section	Bump / Normai - Softness	0
	Unter to an		
	Hatch in 3D		

In the Glass property window, as you can see, I've completely removed the reflection, as if the glass wasn't there. Of course, if you want, you can set low values for refraction and reflection. However, keep in mind that in this scene the



intensity of the sunlight is strong and the background is bright, so you shouldn't see any reflection of the interior on the glass.



Window glass with reflection

Terrace flooring:

This will be the surface that gets the most sun. To keep it from being over-burned, I've assigned it a matte render style and set the brightness to low.

Material propert	ties			×
Name	36_dolomia marble floor tile texture-sea	Copy mater	ial properties	Paste material properties
Texture(albedo)	~	Producer:	generic	
Management and an other spins to service		Render styles	Matte	\sim
		☆ Texture / Color		
		Colour		
		Texture	36_dolomia marble floo	r tile texture-seamless_hrkri3.jpg
		2000 x 2000		
		Make seamles	ss pattern	
		Merge with control	olor	
		Brightness		12
		0		
			ties	
1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.		Transparency		0%
1. 1. 1.				
	Annearance		mapping	
	Appearance	Ambient Occlusi	on (AO)	0
	Thermal parameters			
	PTM parameters	Bump / normal r	napping	0
	buw parameters			
	Hatch on section	Bump / Normal	- Softness	0
	Hatch in 3D			
		Help		OK Cancel

Prepare the next test render with the values already set.



4th render: after fine-tuning the materials

Save the fourth render image: Render_04

It's okay if it looks dark, we'll correct it with effects at the end of the workflow.

Compare the third and fourth render images:





3rd render

•

4th render

Using a custom panoramic image

The *Hills in the distance* panorama image is replaced by a custom panorama image. The extension of the panoramic images is .hdr. You can download high quality panoramic images from various websites, e.g. Poly haven: <u>https://polyhaven.com/hdris/nature</u>







- Download the Rural Asphalt ROAD hdr image.
- Resolution is recommended 2K 4K. Images with higher resolution may overload the project due to their large size. (In case of low resolution, the image will be pixelated.)

(The already downloaded panorama image can be found here: ...\ARCHlineXP DRAW\2024\Workshop_Intermediate\2_Visual_Design\rural_asphalt_road_4k.hdr

Setting up the panoramic image is easy to do in the 3D window.

• Select the panoramic image

After closing, the result is displayed in the 3D window.



Background options

Now select the Rotate panorama background command:



 Use the horizontal slider to change the direction of the panorama and find the view you want. In the example we use 150°. The 3D view follows the movement of the slider.

The angle thus adopted will be used in the render window.

.



• Create the render with the new panorama image: click on the **Inherit background from 3D model** button. The panorama image selected and set in the 3D view will be transferred to the render window.

Resolution	1280x720 (Widescreen 16:9 - HD)	~	
Render presets	Q1 - Quick preview image	~	
Samples per pixel (anti-aliasing)	2	V	
Renderpass count	30	~	
Sharper details	Image: A state of the state		
Enable artificial lights			
Scaling of artificial lighting	100 %	~	
Sunlight	Cloudy daylight	~	
Use IES Light in all spotlights.			
Choose IES	Edit		
Date and time	17 May 15:00 (Daylight)		
Background	Panorama	~	
Panorama	Custom panorama		
Filename with path	C:\Users\Klaudia\Documents\ARCHlineXP Dr		
Panorama direction	150		
Specify a folder to save render i	D:\ARCHlineXP Draw\2024\Render\Render_AK\		
Background brightness	100 Brighter, daytime scenes	~	
Background brightness	100 Brighter, daytime scenes		
Background brightness	100 Brighter, daytime scenes	3D model	
Background brightness	100 Brighter, daytime scenes	3D model /off ult	





2.3.2. Material adjustment on furniture - Phase 2

In phase 2, we deal with the furniture.

Let's turn on the "Furniture" layer, where the furniture can be found and rebuild the 3D model.

Layer walk	
Accessories (15405)	
Curtains (8031)	
Lamps (673)	
Murature Base (97)	
Refresh 3D	
ОК	Cancel
	/

We also assign render styles to the new elements:

- Parquet style for the bookcase
- Textiles for the sofa, cushions, chair fabric and carpet
- Metal style for metal legs.

It's worth taking a close-up test render of each piece of furniture to see any imperfections at a low resolution.



5th render

Sofa upholstery material:

Name 57_canvas fabric texture-seamless_hr Copy material properties Paste material properties	
Texture(albedo) Colour	^
I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I	
1024 x 1024	
Make seamless pattern	
Merge with color	
Brightness	
	_
✓ Physical properties	_
Rasic settings	
Transparency 0°	6
	_
Metalic (Reflection) 0	6
Roughness(Blurry Reflection(Visually indistinct mirroring))	6
Appearance	_
Sump / normal mapping	
Thermal parameters Ambient Occlusion (AO) 0	
BIM parameters	_
Bump / normal mapping 7	
Hatch on section	_
Hatch in 3D Bump / Normal - Softness 1	
	_
	v
Неір ОК Са	ncel

63



Bookcase:

Name	21_light wood fine texture-seamless_hrk	Copy material properties Paste mater	ial properties
exture(albed	o) ~	Colour	
		Texture 21_light wood fine.jpg	
		2610 x 2000	and the second second
State of the local diversion of the			
	Contract destant	Make seamless pattern	
		Merge with color	
	COLOR DE LA CAL	Brightness	60
	is any the second	0	
	- De ciente	Basic settings	001
	the second second	Iransparency	0%
			250/
		Metalic (Reflection)	25%
			50/
		Roughness(Blurry Reflection(Visually indistinct mirroring))	5%
	Appearance		
	Thermal parameters	Bump / normal mapping Ambient Occlusion (AQ)	0
			0
	BIM parameters	Bump / normal mapping	3
	Hatch on section		5
		Bump / Normal - Softness	25
	Hatch in 3D		
		•	

Grey and brown cushion, chair upholstery:

	Colour pmp_vol.07_p02_fabric_4_bump.jpg 1000 x 1000	
	■ Texture mpm_vol.07_p02_fabric_4_bump.jpg 1000 x 1000	
	1000 x 1000	
	□ Make seamless pattern	
	Merge with color	
	Brightness	57
	Transparency	0%
	Metalic (Reflection)	0%
	Roughness(Blurry Reflection(Visually indistinct mirroring))	0%
Appearance		
	A Bump / normal mapping	
rmal parameters	Ambient Occlusion (AO)	0
IM narameters		
in parameters	Bump / normal mapping	5
atch on section		
Uptob in 2D	Bump / Normal - Softness	10
Hatti III 3D		
	Appearance rmal parameters IM parameters atch on section Hatch in 3D	Brightness > Physical properties > Basic settings Transparency > Metalic (Reflection) > Metalic (Reflection) > Roughness(Blurry Reflection(Visually indistinct mirroring)) > Metalic (Reflection) > Metalic

Carpet:

Name	18_white carpeting texture-seam	nless_hr	Copy material properties	Paste material properties
xture(albed	0)	~ 0	, alour	
AT HERE	Constant and the second	00000	Texture T8_white carpetin	g texture-seamless_nr.jpg
		SEX 20	000 x 2000	
SACR				
y the			Make seamless pattern	
			Merge with color	
文化历		BI	ightness	55
			Physical properties	-
ender T			Basic settings	
		Tr	ansparency	0%
			7	
		M See	etalic (Reflection)	0%
89983			, ,	
品油		BER B	-/	distinct mirroring)) 0%
	Appearance			
	Thermal parameters		Bump / normal mapping	0
		A		0
	BIM parameters			
	Hatch on caction	B	ump / normal mapping	8
	naturi on section			_
	Hatch in 3D	B	ump / Normal - Softness	0

Metal legs of sofa, table, chairs:

Name	Steel	Copy material properties Paste material pro	perties
exture(albed	lo)	· · ·	_
	,		
		512 ··· 520	
		312 X 320	
		Make seamless pattern	States Composition
		Merge with color	
		Brightness	20
		Transparency	0%
		Metalic (Reflection)	4%
		Roughness(Blurry Reflection(Visually indistinct mirroring))	8%
	Appearance		
		Bump / normal mapping	
	Thermal parameters	Ambient Occlusion (AO)	0
	BIM parameters		
		Bump / normal mapping	0
	Hatch on section		
	Hatch in 3D	Bump / Normal - Softness	0
		Help OK	Canc

Make the new test render still with 1280x720 resolution and Q1 preset:





6th render

The result is evolving, let's continue working with artificial lights.

2.4. Artificial lights

In addition to natural lighting, the correct management of artificial light sources is very important. A well-lit space can give a pleasant feeling to those who look at it. It can help to highlight important parts of the room. By playing with light and shadow reflections, you can make the final result more exciting.

Start with lighting the darker parts of the room, then use spots, for example, to brighten up the more interesting parts of the room (e.g., a wall painting) and so on, taking care not to over-light the scene. If you reduce the intensity of the shadow, you 'flatten' your image.

With lamps off

• Turn on the "Lamp" and "Curtains" layers.

We have three groups of light sources: a floor lamp in the left corner, a small table lamp on the bookcase and 2 large pendant lamps. In the Standalone rendering window, turn off the *Enable artificial lights* option and start rendering.

	Photorealistic Rendering	
	Resolution	1280x720 (Widescreen 16:9 - HD) 🗸
	Render presets	Q1 - Quick preview image 🛛 🗸
	Samples per pixel (anti-aliasing)	2
ayer walk	× Renderpass count	30 🗸
Accessories (15405)	Sharper details	
Curtains (8031)	Enable artificial lights	
Furniture (5024)	Scaling of artificial lighting	100 %
amps (673)	Sunlight	Cloudy daylight 🗸
urature Base (97)	Use IES Light in all spotlights.	
	Choose IES	Edit
	Date and time	17 May 15:00 (Daylight)
	Background	Panorama 🗸
	Panorama	Custom panorama 🗸 🗸
	Filename with path	C:\Users\Klaudia\Documents\ARCHlineXP Dr
	Panorama direction	150 ~
	Specify a folder to save render i	D:\ARCHlineXP Draw\2024\Render\Render_AK\
	Background brightness	100 Brighter, daytime scenes 🗸 🗸
Display empty layers		Inherit background from 3D model
Defends ap	Start Rendering	Kendered Frame on/off
J Refresh 3D		
_kerresn 3D		Change to the default



7th render: Render image with lights switched off

With lamps on

The picture still shows only natural lighting, regardless of whether the lights were on. In the render window, under *Details*, turn on *Enable artificial lights* and restart the render.





8th render: Render image with lights switched on

Low light

If you compare the two pictures, you can see that the small lamp and the floor lamp are very good at illuminating the dark parts of the scene. The 2 large pendant lights can be switched off, because this part of the room is already illuminated by the sun.



Let's make a rendering anyway. Remember to turn the lights back on in the standalone render window. At this point, it's worth setting the exposure higher in the effects tab to brighten up the scene.





9th render

So, the lighting of the scene is right.

2.5. Final render image

We are now preparing the final render: in **FullHD (1920x1080) resolution** and **Q2 quality**. In most cases, Q2 quality is sufficient because there is no significant difference between Q2 and QX quality.

When do we recommend QX quality?

It should be used when there are parallel edges close to each other in the scene, e.g. a decorative strip. In such cases, you will get significantly better results with Qx.

Phase 3: switching on accessories

• Let's also turn on the last layer with the Accessories.

We can also refine the material of the accessories, we can make more test renders. Here we are preparing the final render:

• In the standalone render window, enter the following values:



		Photorealistic Rendering		
ayer walk	×			
,		Resolution	1920x1080 (Widescreen 16:9 - Full HD)	~
ccessories (15405)		Render presets	Q2 - Cleaner, higher quality image	~
urtains (8031)		Samples per pixel (anti-aliasing)	4	
urniture (5024)		Renderpass count	30	~
amps (673)		Sharper details		
urature Base (97)		Enable artificial lights		
		Scaling of artificial lighting	100 %	~
		Sunlight	Cloudy daylight	~
		Use IES Light in all spotlights.		
		Choose IES	Edit	
		Date and time	17 May 15:00 (Daylight)	
		Background	Panorama	~
		Panorama	Custom panorama	~
		Filename with path	C:\Users\Klaudia\Documents\ARCHlineXP	Dr
		Panorama direction	150	~
		Specify a folder to save render i	D:\ARCHlineXP Draw\2024\Render\Rende	r_AK\
		Background brightness	100 Brighter, daytime scenes	~
Display empty layers			Inherit background from 3D	model
Refresh 3D		Start Rendering	Rendered Frame on/of	
OK Cancel			Change to the default	
			Close	

Let's start the rendering. The larger size of the image and the Q2 setting make it easier to check that everything is correct in the image. However, more render time is needed.

Save this image as: Render_10_Q2_1920

Using effects

The final result may still look dark. Now set *Effects* with the values below. Of course, if you want the image to look lighter or darker, you can change them. Always set the Exposure first so that the image is bright enough. Adjust the other values very gently.

Also save this image as Render_10_Q2_1920_effect to compare it with the original. You can save multiple images with different Effect settings.





10th final render: Q2, 1920x1080, using effects

We can also create the QX render if needed. Here the render time will increase significantly.

Photo retouching

The visual designs you see on the internet or in catalogues are all photo-retouched. A good photo post-production only enhances the beauty of the render image that is already well done. Just adding a little contrast or lighting can add a lot of subtlety to the result.

There are different programs: Gimp, Lightroom, Photoshop, etc.

You can use these, but you can also use the Effects in ARCHLine.XP Render to get a nice result without using an external program.


Workshop 3: Importing architectural plans



3. Workshop: Importing architectural plans

During this workshop, we look through all options how we can import an architectural floorplan into ARCHLine.XP then create a 3D architectural model on that basis. The time to complete the model depends on the imported file type. Going down on the list below the time significantly lessens.

We can get the floorplan in the following formats.

- image as .jpg, .png format
- raster image as PDF format
- ♦ as vector PDF
- as DWG drawing
- ✤ as IFC model
- ✤ as Revit file
- Open your browser and watch the "Importing Architectural plans" video tutorial.

3.1. Blueprint: Converting floor plans from images to 3D models

When preparing a design, we often start with an existing floor plan, which requires architectural plan processing. The simplest scenario is when we receive the floor plan as a scanned raster image.

- When the floor plan is available as a raster image in which architectural elements are clearly recognizable, and the image contains few other types of elements, this "clean" floor plan can be vectorized. In this case, we recommend using the Blueprint method, which allows you to convert a floor plan provided as an image into a 3D model.
- If the image containing the floor plan is "not clean", meaning it contains many elements beyond the architectural components, we suggest using the "Importing a Floor Plan as an Image" method demonstrated in the next section.

Let's look at the case of a "clean" floor plan:

Vectorizing raster image floor plans allows for converting a scanned floor plan into a vector drawing, then into a 3D model. After importing the raster image, ARCHLine.XP automatically performs the vectorization, and the result can be placed as a group anywhere on the floor plan.

Next, the vector drawing needs to be calibrated by setting a recognizable measurement.

The Generative Floor Plan command interprets the 2D group and converts it into a 3D model containing walls, doors, and windows.

3.1.1. Importing a Raster Image

• Select the Building menu - Blueprint - From Raster Image - Image Vectorizer command.



• Choose the desired raster image format floor plan on your computer from the folder:

Documents\ARCHlineXP Draw\2024\Workshop_Intermediate\3_Importing_Architectural_Plans\JPEG-PNG and select Offices.png.

Ensure that the DPI (dots per inch) value is between 300 and 500. If you import a lower-resolution image, it is likely to result in pixelated scanning.



	Offices		Pro			P- Pottom-	most	
lame	Unices			wse	<u>r</u>	o- Bottom-	nost	
ath	C:\Users\klaud\Docu	C:\Users\klaud\Documents\ARCHlineXP Draw\2024\Works				🚍 Raszterkép		
	Attached			~				
Insertio	n Point	Size			Rotation	n		
Spec	ify a custom reference p	Specif	y on-screen		Spe	cify on-scree	n	
x:	0 mm	Length	1000 mm		Angle) `	
Y:	0 mm	Height	288.3 mm					
Preview					Transpa	arency		
		Resolutio	n: 2858 x 824				0	
ŢŢ		1						
ĒĒ		1						

• Place the image in the floor plan window. The program will automatically perform the vectorization and display the vectorized group elements (lines, polylines). Place the group as well:





Image

Group

3.1.2. Scaling to real life distance

- Select the *Building menu Blueprint From Raster Image Scale to real life distance* command. Then select the group and press Enter.
- Specify the distance by marking two points, then assign the new physical distance. Always check afterward that the correct dimensions are created following scaling.

ARCHLine.XP ×
Input the real world distance between the points
New value: 900
OK Cancel

3.1.3. Converting lines to walls – Generative floor plan

Converting lines to walls and openings is an automated process.

• Select the Generative floor plan command. In the dialog that appears, set the desired threshold values.



• Select the group.

The 3D model is generated:



• Adjust the architectural elements: delete unnecessary walls, connect the required ones, and place the missing openings.





3.2. Import floorplan as image

This method is recommended when the image containing the floor plan is "not clean," meaning it contains many elements besides the architectural ones, making it difficult to recognize the architectural elements. In this case, the previous *Blueprint – Converting floor plan from image to 3D model* method cannot be used.

Let's look at the Importing floor plan as an image method:

3.2.1. Import raster image

- First import the previously saved raster image. Select File / Import / Raster image command.
- Choose the folder ...\ARCHlineXP Draw\2024\ Workshop_Intermediate\3_Importing architectural plans\JPEG and the file Beetroot_Bar_floorplan.jpg.
- Now the Image Property window appears:

File				Genera	l Properties	
Name	Beetroot_Bar_floor	Beetroot_Bar_floorplan Browse				ost ~
Path	C:\Users\Cadline\Documents\ARCHlineXP Draw\2020\Cou			Raster image		
	Attached		N	/		
Insertior	n Point	Size		Rotatio	n	
Speci	ify on screen	Specif	y on-screen	Spe	cify on-screen	
X:	0 mm	Length	1000 mm	Angle	0	~
Y:	0 mm	Height	1426.1 mm			
Preview				Transp	arency	
		Resolution	n: 2410 x 3437			0
1						

• Press OK to close the dialogue and either place the image by entering the two corner points, or press Enter after entering the first corner point to place the image at the original size.



• Then it is recommended to use "Fit to view" command to get the optimal zoom of the image.

3.2.2. Calibration

- The imported image is not scaled. Now we have to calibrate the drawing. On the image, there are dimensions such as wall length.
- Use the shown wall length for calibration:



- Click on the image, then choose "Calibrate" from the local menu.
- Now define endpoints of the selected wall and enter the actual size (4000 mm).



e ge	ARCHLine.XP 2020 × Input the real world distance between the points New value: 4000
	Cancel

- Now use the "Fit to view" command again.
- It is advisable to check the accuracy of the calibration. The quickest way is going to the **Ribbon menu / Dimension / Measure** and select **Distance** tool.

Drafting	g Dimension		cumentation	1
ckets Lamp	os on wall	Edit	() Measure	
rior		Edit	+	
	Floor plan -	Default ·	+? Dis	tance

• As you can see the "Measured distance" is 4000 mm, so the calibration was accurate. Now we have a scaled floor plan.

 Info about distance
 4000.8 mm

 Measured distance in x
 0 mm

 Measured distance in y
 4000.8 mm

 Measured distance in y
 4000.8 mm

A difference of 10-20 mm is acceptable. If the deviation is greater than this, repeat the Calibration instruction.

Next step is to draw walls.

3.2.3. Rotate the image

The vertical and horizontal walls in the image are not completely vertical and horizontal because the drawing in the image is rotated slightly.

In such a case, it is a good idea to rotate it back before starting work.

- Draw a vertical red line (Drafting Line tool) from point 1 upwards. Now you can clearly see the inaccuracy.
- From the local menu of the image, select Rotate from... command.
- Specify the first angular segment by clicking on points 1 and 2.
- Then click on the red line (3).

 \square



If the lines overlap, the walls are completely vertical. Delete the auxiliary line.

3.2.4. Create wall styles

Now we create a new wall style which can be used for all projects: 1 layered 20 wide wall From the **Ribbon bar / Building menu**, right-click on the **Wall** command and select **Property**.



• Set the wall "Total thickness" to 200 mm, and "Unconnected height" to 2700 mm (1).



Wall		×	Styles ×
General properties	Finish Face: Interior	Bright white	1 layered 06 wide wall 1 layered 08 wide wall
Simple Line	Finish Face: Exterior	Coffee_cream	1 layered 10 wide wall 1 layered 12 wide compact brick
		Brick3	1 layered 25 wide compact brick
Unconnected Height 2700 mm V	Slant angle	Styles	×
Top offset from the floor top level (> 0: Up) 0 mm	Structural wall	New name of style	~
Base offset from the floor U 0 mm ~	Wall status	Folder	
Total thickness: 200 mm	Location line		~
Edit Compound Walls		Subfolder	
	Inclined wall section height Wall I	Folder and subfolder specification is n If you specify these, the given style na	ot mandatory. me will automatically fit into the hierarchy.
	U-value: 2.60 W/(m2*K)	Scope	
		Available in this project only	6
	Skip this wall over room	Available in all projects	•
			OK Cancel
Preview 2D view ~			
Axis line attributes		A T	New
Attributes of the Finish Face: Interior		· · ·	Activata
· visibility of sides		6	Activate Modily
BIM Parameters 1 layered 38 wide wall		OK Cancel	Rename Delete

- Click on the **Style** button (2).
- In the "Styles" dialogue window, click on "New" to create a new style (3).
- Name the new style "1 layered 20 wide wall" (4). This style can be used in any projects. Hit OK (5) to close the dialogue window.
- The new style activated automatically. Close the wall dialogue window (6).

3.2.5. Draw a wall

• Let's draw walls by choosing the Ribbon menu / Building / Wall command.

File		 1	$\square \cap$	•	X 🗋	Ö	🖉 🗙 🚥	# 7	Ā + ?	≠ Edit	Vie	ew Bu	ilding
Properties	Wall	7	Connection Edit •	+	Door	Window	Curtain wall	[] Column	C Beam	Slab	Roof	Ceiling	۲ Railin
Properties	6773					Openii	ng			Structure	2		
Design center		W	all										

• To redraw walls, you have to give the starting and endpoints. Be careful the wall thickness should fall to the good side of the reference line.

From the floating menu, choose "Right side" then click on the wall endpoint. Now follow the image and draw all walls on the floorplan.



To complete the entire model, you can use other ARCHLine.XP tools such as door, window, slab.





3.3. Import floor plan from raster PDF file

In the following example, the floor plan is provided in a raster PDF file. Before we start processing, let us clarify what the contents of the PDF file might be:

There are two types of PDF file:

- The PDF file content is real raster image
- The PDF file content is a geometric (vector) drawing.

How can we decide which type of PDF file we received?

Before importing the PDF file, open it from File Explorer and enlarge the floor plan:

1. If you notice that the more you zoom in, the more pixelated the image, then the PDF file is actually a raster image.





2. If zooming in does not change the quality of the image, you have a vector PDF.



Whether the PDF file is raster or vector, it is processed by the same PDF import command. For raster PDFs, the imported base drawing remains raster (image), for vector PDFs the result is a vector drawing.

3.3.1. Import a PDF file as a raster image

- Select the File menu / Import / PDF command.
- Choose the folder ... ARCHlineXP Draw\2024\Workshop_Intermediate\3_Importing_Architectural_Plans\PDF and the file Charleville Mansion.pdf.



- Once it is a raster file, select the Data as raster image option.
- The *Resolution* should be 300 dpi to ensure that details are visible when enlarged.
- Select page 1 of the multi-page PDF file.

PDF import options			
Procedure			
O Data vectorization			
Data as raster image			
Resolution			
300 dpi ~			
The selected PDF document of	ntains 2 page(s)		
◯ All pages			
Selected pages	1		
Enter a list of the selected page	e numbers and/or ranges,		
e.y. 1,3,0-12		ОК	Cancel

• Place the PDF file near the origin. Enter. Use the "Fit to view" tool to enlarge the image if necessary.

3.3.2. Calibration

The raster image is not scaled; therefore, we have to calibrate. Zoom in the raster image and select a wall which has a dimension value.

• Go to Ribbon menu / Drafting / Raster image and select Calibrate tool and then the image.



• Select the first point (1) then the second point on the parallel wall (2).





• In the appearing dialogue window enter the dimension given by the imported floorplan **4,200 mm**. Check your work with the Measure command.



3.3.3. Create walls

- Now, images are scaled. Use the "Fit to view" option.
- Clicking on **Ribbon menu / Building / Wall** option, on the left side under properties wall styles will come up.
- Choose the previously created 200 mm wide wall style (1 layered 20 wide wall) from the appearing list and start to redraw the external walls.

When you finished with it, you can see other walls of different widths on the floorplan.

• Under properties, you can easily swap between different wall thickness without closing the drawing command. Choose "1 layered 38 wide" wall, and draw the last wall.

Properties	4 ×
1 layered 20 wide wall	Ø.
Style	^
🔀 1 layered 06 wide wall	
🔀 1 layered 08 wide wall	
🔀 1 layered 10 wide wall	
1 layered 12 wide compact brick	
1 layered 20 wide wall	
1 layered 25 wide compact brick	
🚰 1 layered 25 wide wall	
🚰 1 layered 30 wide wall	
🔀 1 layered 38 wide wall	

1	~	6	
C			
10	1	20	
1.25	2.1	24.1	

 Now open "Layer Manager" and turn off the layer on which the program has placed the PDF file. Only the floor plan you have drawn will be visible, not the PDF.

Now we completed the floorplan. This method helps us to reproduce quickly and precisely the existing architectural floorplan.



3.4. Import a floor plan from a vector PDF file as geometry

In the case of the architectural design process, as we have already seen, the floorplan can be obtained in different formats. Let's see an example when the floorplan is available in PDF geometry.

Before importing **Happy House first floor**.pdf, open the image from File Explorer and zoom in. The more you zoom in, the lines remain lines, and it won't be pixelated as we have seen in the previous example. Therefore, you have to import it as PDF geometry.

3.4.1. Import a vector PDF file

- Now select Ribbon menu / Import / PDF command.
- Choose the folder ... ARCHlineXP Draw\2024\Workshop_Intermediate\3_Importing_Architectural_Plans\PDF and the file Happy House first floor.pdf.

The PDF import options are including vector geometry, raster image, True Type text, Layers, drawing scales and other minor features.

In the dialog box, select the following options. Turn off the "Solid fills" and the "Apply lineweights" command.

- 1	

We recommend to try different import options as well.

PDF import options		
Procedure Data vectorization Data as raster image	Lavers Lavers from the input .pdf document Imports all visible PDF objects to the current layer	PDF import options Join line and arc segments Convert solid fills to hatches
Data to import ✓ Vector geometry Solid fills ✓ TrueType text ✓ Raster image ✓ Shading objects		
The selected PDF document contains 1 p	page(s)	
All pages		
○ Selected pages	1	
Enter a list of the selected page number e.g. 1;3;6-12	s and/or ranges,	OK Cancel

In the next window, enable the preview and set the scale factor of the PDF file so that you get a scaled floor plan. Use the ruler to decide which scale unit to use.

Here we choose mm. The unit of measurement displayed on the ruler is then closest to the actual measurement: 20 m.

PDF import options		
Preview options: Preview - enabled for files less than 3Mb v		
Scale factor		
	The ruler displays the unit of measurement	20 m
	ОК	20 m Cancel

87



• The program automatically places the PDF file in the origin as a group. Use the "*Place with new origin*" option only if you want to place the image elsewhere.

Scaling

- In the PDF file, the length of the wall above is 13 772 mm.
- Check this value using the Annotate / Measure / Distance command: it is 13 735 mm. So, there is a difference of 37 mm. We can correct this.



ARCHLine.XP	×	- Scale
Scale factor X		A Type the value
	New value: 13772/13735	x
		Close
	OK Cancel	
	84C4 mg/1 0467 888 488 mg/2 61m3/1C	

The scaling is done.

Check the previous distance also with Annotate / Measure / Distance: 13 772 mm, so we are working with an accurate drawing.

Measured distance	13772.8 mm	
Measured distance in x	13772.7 mm	
Measured distance in y	46.7 mm	

The imported PDF file is a group. The elements of the group can be edited if necessary. To do this, you need to enter the group, which you can do using the *Local menu - Edit group* command. Once editing is complete, the group must be closed using the *Local Menu - Close group* command so that work can continue.

L.,		Group (1) [1/1] >>>		1		ARCHLine.XP	
		Properties	\sim			Last command - Edit group	
	ß	Select				Last selection	<u> </u>
	X	Delete			×	Cancel	
	1	Copy properties	ar (21-17)	>		File >	
		Phase •		۲	X	Cut	
	_			- E		Сору	·
	ت ا	Replace group		- 11		Paste	
		Edit text in group		- 11	Ð	Undo	
	14	Fuele de aneur		- 11	0	Redo	
	₩	Explode group			[#]	Close group	
	507	Edit group				Layer >	1
l	L ⁶⁷ J	curr group	4			Isolate >	
		Scale group			0	Pan	
		Draw Order			e.XP	Zoom in	
) N.HOD		Group parameters			Q	Zoom out (0.7x)	
		Layer >	<u> </u>			Zoom all	

This PDF has been imported with its elements on a separate layer, which can be seen in the Layer Manager. However, it can be confusing to be able to select the PDF when working with it, so you may want to follow these steps to lock it:

- Move the group's layer to the "Transfer" layer.
- In the group properties, set the Force layer,
- Then go to the Layer Manager and close the "Transfer" layer.
- This way, when you click on the floor plan, the group will not be selected, but its elements can be referenced.



3.4.2. Draw walls on DWG floor plan

90

Let's continue our work with drawing walls.

- First set the wall properties. Set the height to 2,700 mm.
- Select Ribbon menu / Building / Wall / Tracing walls By Parallel lines command.



• By using this command, we can easily draw a wall without knowing the width of the walls. The technique is the following. First click near to starting point (1) and then the endpoint (2), finally click on the opposite side of the wall (3).



- Now redraw the entire floorplan.
- As a final step, it's worth to connect the main wall into an already existing L connection. Click on Toolbar; there you can find wall connection commands, find T connection and then specify the wall to be connected and select the already connected walls.



• The partition walls are still missing. Draw them by using Tracing walls By Parallel lines command.

Now we finished. If it is necessary, we can improve on wall connections by using L or T connections.



3.4.3. Creating niche

Next, we are going to create a niche:

- When you click on the wall (1) click on Component mode (2).
- Activating this command now you can edit only one side of the wall.
- Click on the inner side of the wall and choose "Add polyline", now you can insert a niche here.





3.4.4. Place openings

Let's continue the work with placing openings.

Doors

First set the door properties.



- Select "Flash" door and set its distance from the wall to 0 mm.
- Now choose Ribbon menu / Building / Door / Door by two points command.
- Give the door first (1) and second point (2) on the floor plan and finally set the opening direction (3)Repeat these steps for placing other doors.



 \square

If it is necessary, we can modify its distance from wall under properties later.

Windows

Now place windows.

• First set the windows properties.

File	DB		X	0	2 🥑	1 ×				1 +? ⁺ =	Edit	View	Buildin	g
	<u>></u>		Cor	nnectio	on 🔻	-		\square	[Ī	Ð		<i>!</i>
Prop	erties	Wall 🖉	Edi	t 🔻		Door	V	Vindow	Curt	ain wall	Colum	n Beam	Slab	R
Ħ	Wall		÷					Openir	ıg				Structur	e
Π	Openir	ng	•		Door					• 8	🗱 Fin	e	-	1:
	Structu	Ire			Mind			und floo	r (0 mi	n) [+				
	Structu	lie	, r	Ξ	wind	ow								
11	Stair, R	amp, Railing	+		Curta	in wall								
3	Room		+											
*	Terrain	l.												

- Now select the "Flush" window and set the distance from wall to 400 mm.
- Now select from Building / Window / Window by two points.

		+ ? ≠ E	Edit Vi	ew	Building		
				Ð		Y	
Window	Curtair	n wall	Column	Beam T	Slab	R	
Single					*		
				+		1:1	
Double							
				+			
Various							
₽		\bigcirc		+	•		
Plac	ing windo	w					1 Clength 12149 mm
🖽 Win	dow by tw	vo points					6122 [20'-1'']
H Win	dow not l	nosted by	wall				

- Now give the window starting and endpoint on the floorplan. Now the window is placed.
- Repeat the same to place other windows.

Where the program has placed the window on the exterior of the wall, it is necessary to mirror it.

• Select the window and by clicking on the "Mirror" marker, choose "Mirror" command.



- Originally the distance from wall is 100 mm, now modify this value to 400 mm.
- Now mirror other windows and change the distance from the wall too.



3.4.5. Create window chamfer

If you zoom in, you can see on the floorplan that the connection between window and wall is slightly beveled; therefore, a chamfer is needed.



To create chamfer, click on the inner side of the wall (1) and choose from the local menu **Wall connection / Complex editing** (2) command.



- Since this is not just a typical chamfer, as the wall goes straight for a while and then it becomes slope. Therefore, we have to insert a node.
- Click on the marker and choose Insert node command and place it.
- The chamfer ending point can be placed by Move node command. Hit Enter to finish.
- Finally click close to the left inner side of the window and from the local menu, choose **Wall connection / Mirror** command. This way, the chamfer can be easily copied to the other side.





Now repeat these steps on other walls. The window chamfer is created.

You completed importing the floorplan and architectural design process.



3.5. Blueprint: Automatic BIM modeling from 2D DWG floor plans

In this example we are going to import a DWG drawing. It also means a geometry import, so as a result, we get a calibrated drawing, which contains lines, polylines, curves, notes, hatches, dimensions, in other words, 2D elements. These items after importing can stay on the original layers, or all object can be placed on one single layer. Based on this DWG drawing, we will now create a two-level building.

The Blueprint feature automatically generates BIM models from DWG floor plans. This intelligent tool interprets 2D drawings and transforms them into 3D models, accelerating the design process and giving designers more time for creative work.

The algorithm "reviews" the drawing and analyzes it based on the specified wall and opening limits.

During the "review," it filters out unnecessary content and searches for patterns in the drawing that can reliably be identified as walls, doors, and windows.

In the next step, it transforms these into real architectural elements, creating walls, doors, and windows.

The process is very fast – architectural models of office buildings covering several hundred square meters are completed in just a few seconds.

What is the recognition rate for walls and openings on the floor plan?

For CAD drawings, the algorithm can achieve a 90-95% recognition rate.

Naturally, there may be patterns in the drawing that cause errors, such as pergolas, which may mislead the program. Therefore, it's always worthwhile to review the result with a designer's eye before further processing the plan.

The process consists of the following steps:

- 1. Import DWG drawing
- 2. Convert the drawing into a local group
- 3. Generated floor plan Convert lines into walls



3.5.1. Import DWG drawing

96

• Select the Building menu - Blueprint - From DWG - Import command.



• Open the **Scholtz_Gabor_E-Invest_DWG-Ground floor.dwg** file from the Documents\ARCHlineXP Draw\2024\Workshop_Intermediate\3_Architectural Plan Processing\DWG folder.

Look in:	📩 DWG		∕ 🧿 🏂 📂 🛄 ▼		Preview
Home	Name Scholtz_ Scholtz_	Gabor_E-Invest_Bp_XXII-1st Floor Gabor_E-Invest_Bp_XXII-Ground fl	Date modified 04/05/2020 08:19 04/05/2020 08:19	Type DWG File DWG File	
Desktop					
Libraries					Merge to current drawing
Inis PC					Keep original layers
Network	<			•	
	File name: Files of type:	Scholtz_Gabor_E-Invest_Bp_XXII-C AutoCAD DWG (*.dwg)	Ground floor V	Open Cancel	

Click on the Open button and the pop-up window will show the following:



- Set the scale of the floor plan to achieve a scaled floor plan. Use the ruler to determine the correct measurement unit select mm here.
- Load the plan by pressing OK.
- Choose the Place with new drawing origin option and position the drawing near the origin with one click.

Merge files	×
Insert as external reference	
Place with new drawing origin	
Place as new building	
	OK Cancel

- Afterward, it's essential to verify that the correct scale was set.
- You can also select the Measure Distance command from the Quick Access Toolbar:

File 🛅 💾	1 A O O 🐰 🛛 🗋 🤞	🔊 🧷 🔟		· - - <mark>-;</mark>	∓ Edit	View	Building	Interior
	🗄 🜔 Blueprint 🔻	I			Distance	~~	<u>A</u>	••
Properties •	Wall 🥢 Edit 🔻	Door T	Window	Curtain wall ▼	Measures 1. Define	s the distar the first p	nce between t oint.	wo points.
Properties	Wall		Opening	9	2. Define	the secon	d point.	

Following the DWG import, you get a high-quality, usable floor plan. In DWG format, the program recognizes not only geometric elements but also dimensions and text, allowing easy editing or deletion from your own floor plan.

Move the bottom-left corner of the floor plan to the origin. To do this:

- Select Edit menu Move Relocate project origin.
- Select the bottom-left corner of the structural wall (1), then click YES in the pop-up window.







• Apply "Fit to View", and you will see that the previously selected corner of the wall has moved to the origin.

3.5.2. Converting the drawing into a Local group

- We can significantly increase the accuracy of the Blueprint algorithm by only leaving the layer related to the walls turned on.
 - Using the Layer Walk command, I activate only the A Walls layer.



• On the floor plan, I select the dimensioning for the openings and move it to the *Dimension* layer, which I then turn off. Now only the walls and the openings within the walls are visible on the floor plan.



In the next step, I convert the drawing into a local group

• Select the *Building menu - Blueprint - From DWG - Create local group* command. Select the entire drawing, and the group is created.

3.5.3. Generative Floor Plan – Creating a 3D BIM model

The algorithm "reviews" the drawing and analyzes it based on the specified wall and opening limits. During the "review," it filters out unnecessary content and searches for patterns in the drawing that can reliably be identified as walls, doors, and windows. It then transforms these into real architectural elements, creating walls, doors, and windows.

- Select the Building menu Blueprint Generative Floor Plan command.
- Enter the threshold values in the dialog box, then press OK.

Create walls from drawing				×
	Wall limits		Created elements	
	Minimum wall thickness	75 mm 🗸	Wall base height	0 mm
	Maximum wall thickness	500 mm 🗸	Wall height	2700 mm
	Minimum wall length	600 mm 🗸	Door height	2100 mm
↓ ↓ 3	Angle tolerance for parallel lines	5° ~	Window sill height	900 mm
	Maximum opening width	2400 mm 🗸	Window height	1500 mm
			Wall finish	eggshell
	Reset		ОК	Cancel







Refining the model:

100

• Draw any missing walls and apply wall T and L connections.





- Add the missing openings using the Door or Window by Two Points command.
- Draw the slab
- Select Building / Slab / Slab by Walls, select the entire drawing, and press Enter to complete the slab.

After deactivating the AWall layer and placing the opening dimensions, the following result is achieved.



3.5.4. Create corner window

We create corner windows by using previously placed windows. You can join any combination of standard windows:

- Two windows are placed on each side of the wall corner, close to where the two walls meet (in the example, these are already available.)
- Using the Window / Windows on wall corner / Join two openings on wall corner command, we select the first and second windows.
- The program will automatically create the alignment and insert the line between the two windows.
- Resize the windows if necessary.

101





3.5.5. Display Lineweights on screen

As a small detour, it's worth reviewing the line thickness display on the screen.

In the View Control bar, clicking on Line weights scale allows us to choose from different line weights scales. The line weights scale applies to the screen and does not affect print settings. The default line weights scale is set to 1:20.



Tip

For example, if you want to print the plan later at a 1:100 scale and also see the corresponding line weight on the screen, choose the 1:100 scale.

"None" Lineweights

The "None" lineweights means that lines are represented in the smallest unit (1px) in the screen, i.e., the lineweights are turned off. It can be useful for editing on floorplan because clear visibility of endpoints and other particular points will improve the accurate work.

1:100

None lineweights





3.5.6. Create First floor

We have already seen before that we are currently working with a two-story house. We have already finished with the ground floor. Next step is to create the 1st floor.

• On the floor plan, turn on all the used layers using the Layer Walk icon.





Let's move to the first floor:

On the Dashboard, select the 1st floor.



We will import the DWG drawing of the first floor to this level. Here we will show another method:

• By opening the File Explorer, simply drag the floor plan onto the first floor.

Pite Home Share View Manage Pite Home Share View Manage Ouck access Name Ouck access Name Ouck access Scholtz_Gabor_E-Invest_Bp_XXII_plan_03_DWG-I.floor.dwg 4/10/ Scholtz_Gabor_E-Invest_Bp_XXII_plan_03_DWG-Ground floor.dwg Scholtz_Gabor_E
↓ Downloads Music Pictures Videos Local Disk (C) v <

- In the pop-up window select mm as in the previous import.
- Place the DWG drawing with new drawing origin.

The first step is to move the DWG drawing to the origin:

• In the lower status bar, I select the Absolute coordinate input and then select the entire floor plan.



- Select the entire floor plan.
- Choose Edit menu Move Move command.
- Select the bottom left corner of the supporting wall and type "0 0" (0 space 0) and press Enter.
- Select "Fit to view" and you will see that the corner point has been moved to the origin.

Shift levels with blue arrows you can move between the Ground floor and First floor, it can also be seen that two DWG drawings are precisely overlapping each other.



In this case, it is not worth using the Blueprint function on the first floor, since generally, the main walls of buildings are the same across different levels.

Therefore, move to the Ground Floor, activate the walls and slab layers with Layer Walk:



106

Layer walk	×
00_Layer 0 (68)	
09_Room (226)	
11_Wall1 (820)	
21_Slab1 (24)	
41_Stair1 (775)	
61_Objects1 (8918)	
62_Objects2 (16)	
63_Objects3 (264)	
71_Dimension1 (353)	
86_Point (1)	
87_Line (518)	
88_Polyline (18)	
89_Circle (32)	
91_Group1 (2)	
96_Text1 (46)	
99_Hatch (18)	
Beam(2) (22)	
Csoport (1)	
Layer 1 (104)	
Méretezés - Nyílászáró méretezés (14)	
Procedural Generated Walls (438)	
Slab (14)	

Select the entire floor plan and copy it to the first floor as follows:

- Click the button.
- In the Level Manager, select the "Copy objects to other floor" command , and in the popup window, choose the 1st floor.
- Close the window by pressing "OK", the walls were copied to the first floor.

Now the walls, openings, slab are copied to the first floor which is nicely represented in 3D view.

- Next, on the 1st floor, you need to modify the walls based on the floor plan. Delete those walls which are non-existent on the first floor.
- Move existing walls to the previously drawn place, thus speeding up the work, then use L and T wall connection tools.





By also utilizing the Blueprint function, we can quickly and easily design a multi-story house from a DWG floor plan.

3.6. Importing IFC model

During the architectural design process, we may receive the floor plan from the architect in various file formats. As we've seen, it can be provided as an image, i.e., .jpg, .png format, raster PDF, vector PDF, or DWG drawing.

ARCHLine.XP is IFC Coordination View 2.0 Import certified design software. Thanks to this we can get floor plans and 3D models at a higher standard from designer using other software like ARCHICAD®, Revit®, Allplan®....

In the previous examples, you could see how much work processing the floor plan entails. The model processing will be the fastest in the case of IFC.

About the IFC file format

The Industry Foundation Classes (IFC) data model was designed to describe building and construction information. The IFC format is a universal, neutral data format considered standard for industrial data exchange today.

ARCHLine.XP supports both IFC4 and IFC 2x3 for import and export. It has an IFC 2X3 Coordination View 2.0 certification. IFC provides 3D geometry and data exchange between different CAD/BIM design software. The most valuable property of the IFC format is preserving architectural elements and properties. The properties of elements like walls and ceilings remain unchanged, though some compromises may occur due to current technology levels. IFC-based data exchange has a much larger capacity than the more widely used DXF/DWG-based data format.

In the case of IFC import, we can adopt real walls, floors, and other elements from a co-designer using another software, which we can then edit as actual walls, floors, and other elements. Finally, we can pass the finished plan back as an IFC file, allowing our co-designers to continue working on it with similar ease using other programs.

Let's take a look when we receive the project as an IFC model.

3.6.1. Importing IFC files

When importing an IFC file, separate drawing units are created that correspond to the individual parts of the IFC project structure. IFC files can be imported as a new project, as a new project part, as an attached external reference, or as a standalone model. The imported IFC model retains the complete layer structure and level structure of the original model. You can check this in the Layer Manager and Level Manager dialog.

The import of IFC files can occur in two ways::

Drag and Drop

The drag-and-drop tool is a convenient and straightforward way to open an IFC file. Open the folder from which you want to import documents. Drag the files from Windows Explorer onto the ARCHLine.XP window and release the mouse. In the dialog that appears, select the method of import.

File Menu / Import / Import IFC

To import an IFC file, choose File / Import / IFC. In the dialog that appears, select the method of import. The import file dialog will appear, and then select the IFC model you wish to import.

• Click on File menu / Import / IFC command. The program will offer five options.

Fi	le		¥ (] 🗋 🍠 🧷 🔟 🚽 🤊	Import
		New project		Import	Import IEC and croate a new project
1		Open project	ОИ	DWG	The program opens a new project and the result of
	H	Save project	x	3DS	1 the import is saved as part of it.
	B	Save project as	sk	SketchUp	Import IFC
		BIM	► FB	FBX	Add an IFC file to the current project as a separate, editable structure.
		Import	. 8	IFC	
		Export	• F	RFA, RVT	Combine IFC file as external reference with the
		Link	> PD	PDF	3 primary, editable project.
1	Ô	Options	<u></u>	Raster image	Import IFC
		Tools	×	Excel table	IFC model will be visible separately.
		Teamwork	•	ARCHLine.XP	
		Print	Ľ	Import floor plan	Converting IFC to a single object
	Ē	Print queue			5

1. Open a new project file, import the IFC model, and continue working on it.



108 Workshop 3: Importing architectural plans

- 2. Add the IFC model to the current project as a separate, editable structure.
- 3. Link IFC to the current project as an external reference.
- 4. Import the IFC model to the current project in a new view window, suitable for comparing states or for later using a part of the IFC model by copying it into the floor plan view.
- 5. Convert the IFC file content into a single object, useful for furniture objects downloaded in IFC format.
- In our case, when we want to load a floor plan as an IFC, we need to use the first option.
- Select the IFC file from the Documents\ARCHlineXP Draw\2024\Workshop_Intermediate\3_Architectural_Planning\IFC folder, then click the Open button.

Styles

The style names stored in the IFC file appear in the Style Manager. You can specify how and when styles are created.



- Create empty setting and add new ones: In this case, ARCHLine.XP default styles are deleted, and the project contains only the styles imported from the IFC file.
- 2. Keep ARCHLine.XP factory styles and add new ones: In this case, ARCHLine.XP retains the default styles and adds the styles imported from the IFC file.
- In the Import settings window that appears, select the 2nd option: The project keeps the factory styles...

Data filters

You can select what to import from the IFC file: All, or only Architecture or only MEP (pipeline) elements with or without geometry conversion.

Data filters	×					
Please select a filter.						
All Architecture with conversion Architecture with original geometry MEP with conversion MEP with original geometry	Filters					
ok	Cancel					

With original geometry:

This means the model retains the geometry it was originally created with, and the elements are created in ARCHLine.XP as IFC element types. When exporting, the same model received can be returned to the co-designer, supplemented with the user's own model.

With geometry conversion:

This means that architectural elements like walls, slabs, doors, windows, columns, beams, and terrain are converted into the corresponding ARCHLine.XP elements (walls, slabs, etc.). If the original model is very complex, walls, slabs, etc., may
become IFC elements due to non-corresponding complex geometry. Railings, stairs, and roofs can only be created as IFC elements.

Filters

In the Filters window, you can individually select which element types to apply or not apply conversion to.

• Choose the Architecture with geometry conversion option.

3.6.2. Using the model after importing

Specifics of IFC Import

After importing the IFC model, the entire floor plan and 3D model will be visible. It's important to note that the model and its floor plan imported from IFC do not contain drawing elements, such as dimensions or labels. The model retains its original scale, so no scaling is needed in this case.

Another key difference from other imports is that the model imported this way retains the original layer and level structure of the design. We can check this in the Layer Manager and Level Manager dialog windows.

Properties of the imported elements

One of the most attractive features of the IFC import is that it can transfer architectural elements from one program to another, ensuring that they not only preserve their geometry but also remain as actual walls, floors, doors, windows, etc., rather than just 3D solids. These elements not only correspond to the element types in ARCHLine.XP but are also editable. The easiest way to verify the type of a specific element is to select it and check its type in the Properties panel that appears on the side.



During IFC import, the model keeps its original level structure. We can check this by opening the Level Manager.

🛃 Level 1 🗸 🗸	1	+
---------------	---	---

- Check the 3D model as well. In the 3D model, you can see that the building, the terrain, and the objects have loaded.
- Now delete al the trees to make it easier to see through the model.
- Now let's examine the building closer.
- Click on one of its items, e.g., a wall. On the left side under Properties, you can see that it was brought in as a wall in the model. These items not only correspond to ARCHLine.XP item classification, although these can be adjusted/modified.



109



• Now click on a wall and change the height. Now click on the wall and increase the height.



• This is wall remained a wall so we can place opening there. For example, place some windows.



Not all walls conduct this way. Let's check this wall with windows.



• Now place a window on this wall. As a result, you can see that the window was placed, but it is not visible.

111



It could happen when the software imported the item is 3D fixed. It can be checked on the side menu too. In this case, we have to unlock fixation to execute any modification. Turn off this option.



Properties		p ×
Wall		Ŧ
No styl	e	Ø.
Property	Value	^
☆ General		
Layer	A-WALL	~
Colour		
Line type	Simple Line	~
Line weights	0 mm	~
Draw Order	8 - Bottom-most	\sim
Move objects to other floor	Level 2	
Copy objects to other floor	Level 2	
BIM parameters	Edit	
BIM name	Basic Wall:SIP 202	
Height	3716.9 mm	~
Base Elevation	-800 mm	~
GUID	38NblWsDL 118DljLv	/
Set ID	000000000000000000000000000000000000000	
3D fixed		

• After resolving the fixation, the previously placed window now appears on the wall.





The wall dimension has also changed; the bottom is now much below. Change the height back to the original position.

- Now click on the wall, in the appearing pop-up menu choose "Change height" command.
- Align to the next wall endpoint.
- Now remove previously placed window, as there will be no need for it during our work.

The imported items can be an architectural item such as walls, slab.

• Now click on the handrail. As you can see, this is an IFC element.



Now let's start our work, the task is to furnish the room on the first floor facing to the balcony.

- For this, we have to create a perspective view.
- To set the correct height of the view, choose front view (1) option in the appearing pop-up dialogue window. Now move the camera point to the shown position, i.e., to the first floor (2).



- Set 2D view. (1)
- At the first view set the perspective to look the room from outside. (2)
- If the preferred view is set, press green cross to add to the list of the saved views (3).



- Add 3-4 more views; this way, you can practically view around in the given room.
- Press OK to close the dialogue window.
- Start from "View 0" and delete the man standing on the balcony.

Shifting views, we can gradually look around in the room.

Let's see some examples of how to work in an IFC model. The workflow is the same as we had built the model in ARCHLine.XP using architectural elements.



First, put colors on the walls:

- Therefore, we have to go to the Design Center then Catalog / Materials and here you can choose a color.
- Use drag and drop to place the chosen color on the wall and then from the appearing menu choose "as painting" option.



- Click on the second wall, a warning comes up, as we cannot apply the paint on the selected wall. The reason for this that this had been previously 3D fixed.
- Now unlock it.
- Try again to place color on this wall.
- Apply colors on other walls too.
- In case of the wall shown below you have to unlock the 3D fixation.



- Now modify the floor material and put a carpet there.
- Select a carpet from Catalog / Material / Fabrics / Carpet folder and then choose a color. Place it "as painting" on the carpet.



Continue the design the same way.

- You can also place here furniture, let's see an example.
- From the Design Center / Catalog / Objects / Bedroom library, select a bed and place it on the floor plan.
- Activate the floor plan and place the bed shown on the picture.



• Finally, set the relative height of the bed to zero.

We demonstrated a few methods on how to dress up a room to create the interior design plan.



3.7. Importing Revit file

BIM collaboration between architects is based on quick and easy model exchange. A good solution is to import Revit .rvt and .rfa files.

Revit imports often refer to materials in the Autodesk Material Library.

The Autodesk Material Library is a free downloadable installer that contains low, medium, or high-resolution images (approximately 512 x 512, 1024 x 1024, or larger) for material representation.

If the Autodesk Material Library is downloaded to the computer, the model will appear with the textures. These textures are included in the Revit file only as references.

3.7.1. Importing RVT and RFA Files

Revit models can be used in ARCHLine.XP in two ways: as a standalone file or as a reference link. We import them as a standalone file:

- Select File menu / Import / RFA, RVT command.
- Select the RVT file from the Documents\ARCHlineXP Draw\2024\Workshop_Intermediate\3_Importing_Architectural_Plans\RVT folder and click Open.
- ٠
 - In the import settings window select *Method 2: Native RVT/RFA* option.

Import settings	×
Import Method 1: RVT - IFC Converter	
Import Method 2: Native RVT/RFA	

At the end of the import, a dialog box will display the statistics of the imported elements. Here, you can see what architectural and IFC elements the program will import. Click OK to accept.

		×
Elements imported:		
47 Walls,		
9 Slabs,		
3 Columns,		
0 Beams,		
14 Grids,		
20 Dimensions,		
377 IFC elements,		
470 elements processed in total.		
		-
	OK	

3.7.2. Using the model after import

Characteristics of RVT/RFA import

- Depending on the size of the Revit file, it may take several minutes to open the file.
- The original Revit walls, slabs, columns and beams are converted into slabs, columns and beams by ARCHLine.XP, and the other elements are converted into IFC elements.
- The import does not retain references to the source model.
- Project data and model BIM parameters, element type, geometry, wall structure, and materials are imported from the Revit model.
- Families are converted into styles in ARCHLine.XP.

See the model in 3D!

Click on the building wall. In the Properties on the left, you can see that it appears as a wall in the program. In the local menu, look at its properties. Here you can see that it is a layered wall structure, and you can even edit it by clicking on the "Edit Compound Walls" button. You can also edit its general properties like material, height.

I Wall							×
Redr	aw						
			* Visualization				
	-		Colour				
			Line weights		0.3 mm		~
			Line type		Simple Line		~
			Layer		Walls		~
			Priority		8- Bottom-most		~
			Constrains		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		
			Unconnected Heig	ht	3500 mm		
			Base offset from t	he floor	-800 mm		~
			Total thickness		202 mm		
			Slant angle	on neight from	1000 mm		
			Structural wall		Non-bearing wall		
			U-value		U-value: Not calculat	ted	
			Visibility		o value. Not calcula	.eu	
			Same materia	ls			
			Finish Face: Inter	or	Finishes - Interio	or - Plasterboard	
			Finish Face: Exter	ior	Concrete, Sand/	Cement Screed	
			Location line		Wall Centerline		~
			Wall status		Disallow wall join	ns	
	0		Skip this wall	over room bounding			
			Display tiling o	n the interior side	Y		~
			Display tiling o	n the exterior side			~
			Tiling representat	ion on 2D	Off		×
	1		Visibility of side	2S			
Genera	il properties		The reference	line is invisible			
Edit Con	np ynd Walls		The other side	e is invisible	¥		
Wall	Framing		Visible on the	floor above.	Simple Line		<u> </u>
Eurth	er settings		Visible on the	floor below	Simple Line		
BIM Parameters	\SIP 202mm Wall	- conc clad					OK Cancel
Total thickness U-value: U-value: Not calculated	202 mm	Finish Face: Ex	terior				
Layer Function	Material	Thickness	Base offset	Height	Fill	pattern Name	Layer endi Visible in 3D
1 1 - Very low 🗸	Concrete, Sand/	22 mm	-800 mm	✓ 3500 mm	V Hate	h 38 🗸 Conc	Prev 🗸 🧹
2 1 - Very low	Wood - Stud Layer	325 mm	-800 mm	3500 mm	No h	atch Woo	Previous
3 Not defined	Structure - Tim	15 mm	-800 mm	3500 mm	Strip	Struc	Previous 🔽
4< 10 - Medium	Structure - Tim	112 mm	-800 mm	3500 mm	No h	atch Struc	Previous 🔽
5 1 - Very low	Structure - Tim	15 mm	-800 mm	3500 mm	Strip	Struc	Previous
6 1 - Very low	Finishes - Interi	13 mm	-800 mm	3500 mm	No h	atch Finis	Previous
		Finish Face: Int	terior			Layer line properti	es
 Fill pattern orientation: Default ori 	ientation is Orient to View.	You can change	to Align with Elemen	t, it stays aligned to	L. Col 1 2	Line weight 0 mm 0 mm	
	riarity too	5-			3	0 mm	
Collision of layers with the same p	briority, too				4	0 mm	
Collision of layers upon difference	of materials or heights	1.000	er wranning at free w	all onde	5	U mm	
Chippin aker endings		I dv					
		,	er wrapping de free v	airenus			

Revit Families appear in ARCHLine.XP, available as styles with the same properties as ARCHLine styles.

• For example, when you click on the Wall or Slab tool, the Revit families, or styles, appear in blue on the left.

Properties	Д	×	Properties D	×
Basic Wall\Cavity wall_sliders		¢	Foundation Slab\150mm Foundation Slab	Ŷ
Styles			Styles	
1 layered 16 wide wall			* Floor	
🖹 1 rétegű 20-as fal			Concrete-Domestic 425mm	
🗎 1 rétegű 44-es fal			Generic 150mm	
🌣 Basic Wall			Generic 300	
CL_W1			Insitu Concrete 225mm	
Cavity wall_sliders			Timber Suspended Floor	
Foundation - 300mm Concrete			* Foundation Slab	
Interior - 165 Partition (1-hr)			150mm Foundation Slab	
Interior - Partition				_
Retaining - 300mm Concrete				
≥SIP 202mm Wall - conc clad				
Properti Design Project	Style	es	Properti Design Project Styl	es

• Another great advantage of importing Revit is that level structures are also displayed. By clicking on the Level dialog, you can see that the same level structures are there as in the original Revit plan.

Edit le	evels								×
	À 🧔 👙 🤝	>			8	} ↔	List of buildings	Samuel Macalister sample h	ouse design
Nu	Name	Bottom ele	Height	State	Split level hei	Parameters		Name	Elev. Offset
2	Level 2	3000 mm	3000 mm	Active	0 mm	Edit		FF - Finish Floor	0 mm
1	Level 1	0 mm	3000 mm	Off	0 mm			TS - Top of Structure	0 mm
0	Default floor	-1000 mm	1000 mm	Off	0 mm			BS - Bottom of Structure	0 mm
								CE - False ceiling	0 mm
								LE - Ledge	0 mm
								FH - Floor height	3000 mm
								Copy area	Paste
								FH	(N+1)FF (N+1)TS (N+1)TS (N+1)LE (N) CE (N) FF (N) TS (N) BS (N) LE
✓ Site	level is visible on the floor	plan		E	Building elevation a	above sea leve	l in m		_
					0 m			ОК	Cancel

3.7.3. Importing doors and windows

You can also import doors and windows from .rvt and .rfa files into ARCHLine.XP.

- Visit the https://www.bimobject.com/ website. Create a user account, as you need to be logged in to download the items.
- Select the doors category, then filter by Revit files, including the K.LINE brand.

• Choose a door of your choice (we are using the "Entrance door Collection Surface MOJAVE"), then click on the Download page to download it.

4

Entrance door Collection Surface MOJAVE Select files and download Sketchup AutoCAD 3ds Max Revit Archicad 3 O files R 2 files A 0 files F \mathbf{i} 1 files 0 file: MicroStation 0 files Rhino -0 files Only native file formats All files Select all Revit .rvt \checkmark Projet K-LINE Porte Entrée RENO - MOJAVE Collection Surface.rvt Revit .rvt Projet K-LINE Porte Entrée NEUF - MOJAVE Collection Surface.rvt Archicad .lcf Portes d'entrée K·LINE.lcf This site is protected by reCAPTCHA and the Google Privacy Close **Download selection** Policy and Terms of Service ce apply

- Go back to ARCHLine, select File menu / Import / RFA, RVT and load the model.
- Here we also get the statistics of the imported elements, accept this by clicking OK.
- View the model in 3D, right click on the first door and select Convert object to door/window.

In this window, the wall connection points must be aligned with the corresponding points on the model. Grab the points
and drag them to the right place. The diagram at the top right will help you see exactly how to do this. After pressing the
OK button, save it in the library under a name of your choice, in the OUTDOOR category.

- You can even save an entire product line using this method: save the other doors using the same method.
- Use the File menu / Open Project command to open an older project (in the example we use the file
- Documents\ARCHlineXP Draw\2023\Workshop_Intermediate\2_Visual_Design\Harosi_Krisztina_Render_Final.pro file) and place the doors you just saved in it.

• Activate the 3D view, then from the Design Center, select the doors you just saved from the Building / Doors / Outdoor folder. Use the drag and drop method to drag and drop into the 3D view, then select *Place it from wall endpoint*, select the wall surface and then enter the door location.

• With this, the door was included in the project. Click on the door and then on the pencil icon to change its properties, including material, width, height and other parameters.

Door							
Main parameters	Width:	0	.9 m	~		Redraw	•
Representation	Height:	2	.15 m	~		1. Salaria	
Reveal, void, niche, cavity	Thickness:	0	.1025 m			and the second s	
Basic geometry				^			
Outer handle	Hide opening and make a void						
Inner handle	Distance from wall line	0.1 m					
	Sill height	0 m					
Accessories	Outer sill height:	0 m					
Interior and exterior sills	Effective clear width	0.9 m			-		
	Effective clear height	2.15 m					
Built-in details	Colour						_
Information	Line type	Simp	le Line	~			
	Line weights	0 mm		~			
	Draw Order	8- Bottom-most		~	6		
	Reference axis	Side		~			
	Distance from wall corner	0.5153 m				24	
		Lining and architrave					
		Dimension, consignment					
		Thermal parameters					
	Ratio (Illumination area)	100%					
	Ratio (Ventillation area)	100%		~		1	
	Material	Value		^			
	1	Hachure KL6				e	
	2	K.Line Vintage Anodisé	Argent - AC				
	3	K.Line Tendance Gris s	ablé (2900) - NX				-
	4	K.Line Tendance Noir S	Sablé (2100) - OO	\sim			
	<			>			
						K_line	
BIM Parameters	Normal d	oor			ОК		Cancel

If you want to learn more about importing Revit RVT and RFA files, watch the following tutorial video: https://youtu.be/j5jpNyoIDgk

Workshop 4: How to save and manage large-size project

4. Workshop: How to save and manage large-size projects

This tutorial explains how to save project files in different ways, and also gives you essential guide how to manage large size projects.

- Save Project
- * Backup archive
- Automatic save
- Project management
- Large size project management
- Open File Explorer and watch the following tutorial videos on this topic: <u>https://www.archlinexp.com/enrollments/courses/intermediate-course/how-to-save-and-manage-large-size-projects/1</u>
- Choose the folder ...ARCHlineXP Draw\2024\Workshop_Intermediate\4_ Project_ Management and the file Little_John_Living_room.pro

4.1. Save Project

- Before starting your work on the project, save it under a new name.
- Select Ribbon menu / File / Save Project as command, then name the project and select the folder where to save it.

Categorization

- Now save the project under the folder with the name of the customer: *ARCHLineXP Draw\Customer_name\Versions\project_name.pro*, Here we can create sub-folders for different documentations: PI. PDF, Render, 3D_Views, Wall_views
- Every day, save a new file with the current date in the Versions folder, so that all versions are available in case the customer still wants an older design version.

File) 🖁 🕄 📢
	New project	
	Open project	Ctrl+O
	Save project	Ctrl+S
₿	Save project as	Ctrl+Shift+S
	BIM	•
	Import	<i>•</i>

ARCHlineXP Draw → Little John

Name
3D_views
📙 PDF
📙 Render
📙 Saved
Wall_views
🔃 Little_John_Living_room

4.2. Backup archive

In ARCHLine.XP there is a Backup Archive function, this can help us to restore a project at a previous stage. It is important to know this does not replace Save and does not contain the latest version. The backup archive help us to restart our work on the project due to an unexpected computer crash, when the operating system, stops functioning properly and exits.

How it works:

During the day, the program stores a total of three .pro files in the Archive folder in a hidden folder automatically created with the date of the day.

Backup 1: The program makes a copy of the project every day when you open it. This will not be overwritten by later backups, so the daily start status can always be retrieved.

Backup 2-3: Two more backups are made during the day. The user-issued backup and the Automatic Backup to Backup Archive library always overwrite the older of these if it has been at least 60 minutes since the last backup.

Automatic backup to the Backup Archive library

If this option is enabled, ARCHLine.XP will automatically save the project to the Backup Archive library at specified intervals to help preserve your work. Automatic saving is enabled by default. The backup is activated at specified intervals. The default and minimum backup period are 60 minutes. These backups also count towards the maximum of 3 backups per day of a project.

- Click on the cogwheel in the left bottom corner and find Backup Archive under "Open and Save". Here we can set the followings:
- Create Backup Archive
- Interval to save work automatically: 60 minutes
- Path of Backup Archive content
- Delete backup file that is older than the given time interval.
- The interval for keeping archive files: 4 weeks.

Graphics										
Open and Save	Open and Save									
	Project default path(requires restart)	C:\Users\renata.nagy\								
Units and angles	Image Path	C:\Users\renata.nagy\								
Snap and grid	C:\ProgramData\Cadli									
S Current and marker	Google Drive, Microsoft OneDrive - Download folder	C:\Users\renata.nagy\								
Cursor and marker	Enable project backup to your personal cloud account									
User interface	Google Drive									
😧 Item settings	Microsoft OneDrive									
	*Save 3D database (significant increase in size)									
	Transfer settings and files from one computer to another	Edit								
	Migrate custom settings and files from previous releases	Edit								
	Tag/Schedule template folder	C:\Users\renata.nagy\								
	* Manage styles									
	Seckup Archive									
	✓ Create Backup Archive - Daily backup copies for recovery purposes									
	✓ Interval to save work automatically in minutes:	60								
	Use the ARCHLine.XP Drawing Recovery Manager ONLY to recover data.									
	Path of Backup Archive content:	Path of Backup Archive content: C:\Users\renata.nagy\								
	AUTO-ERASE all backup archive that is older than the Archive Preservation Period									
	Archive Preservation Period in weeks:	4 ~								
	Erase Backup Archive older than 4 weeks Edit									
	The Backup Archive stores up to 3 backup copies of a project daily.									
	* *Save auto recover information									
	Save auto recover information	Save auto recover information								
	Save frequency (steps)	5 ~								
	Free space now on C:	577846 MByte								
	* *IFC Import Properties									
	Import classification database from Excel files Edit									
Close	Data filters	Edit								
Ciose										
🏟 🏭 🔌 🖉 🕻	🗼 😂 🗟 Ground floor V 🚹 🕹 🥕 Fal - Ta	eher 🗸 🔛 🕶								

- Please note switching off the auto-erase function means that archived files will use your PC memory.
- Deleted archive files are permanently deleted, so they are not stored in the computer's Recycle Bin. However, it is recommended that the Recycle Bin is emptied on a weekly basis.

4.2.1. Recover Backup Archive

To demonstrate how to use the "Backup Archive", do the following:

- Draw a wall and save the project.
- Draw another wall and save the project again.
- Repeat the previous step one more time.

So, you have 3 backups.

It is very easy to recover files from Backup Archive. Click on File / Tools / Drawing Recovery manager.

Fi	ile		¥	([]	🗋 🍠 🥖 🖮 🖷 🖛 🚽 🤈 + ? = Edit View Building Interior Dr
		New project		Q	Drawing recovery manager
		Open project		X	Project Cleaner
-		Save project		X	Cleaning object library
i.	B	Save project as		۲	Download project from your personal cloud account (Google Drive, Microsoft OneDrive)
		BIM	۲	۲	Logout from your personal cloud account (Google Drive, Microsoft OneDrive)
		Import	F	8	License Assistant
		Export	F		
		Link	•		
	Ø	Options			
		Tools	•		
		Teamwork	•		
		Print			
1	Ē	Print queue			
					× Exit

- In the appearing dialog you will see the path to the Archive folder, here it will search for the archive file, by default it is C:\User\Admin\Appdata\Roaming\cadline\ARCHLineXP2024\Archive. (1)
- Then enter the key word what is included in your project name (2), select the "archive directory" option from scroll down menu, the program will run a search in here (3).
- Click on "Search" (4) and the program lists the results.
- If you find the requested file (5) by clicking on **Open** you can download it.

Find project	cts and drawings			
	Project		Orawing	
Search In	C:\Users\balin\Documen	ts\ARCHlineXP Draw	1	Browse
Search for	Little	2		Search 4
Search res	ults in archive directory:	3 ~	Project contents list	t
File info Browse the Enter a file Start the se	2020_04_24 Ittle_john_living_room Ittle_john_Living_r Itttle_john_Living_r <td>com(1).pro oom(2).pro oom.pro to start your search. tarch for all files that co ton.</td> <td>Preview Preview contain AB pattern. view by clicking Proj</td> <td>ect content list</td>	com(1).pro oom(2).pro oom.pro to start your search. tarch for all files that co ton.	Preview Preview contain AB pattern. view by clicking Proj	ect content list
Press ESCA	PE to stop searching		Open	Cancel

130 Workshop 4: How to save and manage large-size projects

After opening the file, you need to exit the existing project.

The program will then open the retrieved project under the name Document. The project is not yet saved, it has to be saved. Click on the save icon and enter a name.

It is advisable to select the folder of the original project and save it there with the appropriate name.

- Save the project with the name 1_Little_John_Living_room_1.pro in the folder Documents\ARCHlineXP Draw\2024\Workshop_Intermediate\4_ Project_ Management.
- Delete the walls you just drew and save the project.

When you recover a backup that has been found, the program will behave as if you had started a new project, so you have to enter the project name and path when you first save.

4.3. Automatic save

Similar to the Backup Archive, the purpose of Automatic Save is to ensure that in the case of an unexpected system failure, the project can also be recovered with little loss. We call this function "Save Autorecover".

The Automatic save function DOES NOT ENSURE SAVING THE PROJECT! The content of this folder is automatically deleted when the program is closed normally.

- Click on the cogwheel icon in the left bottom corner.
- Under "Open and Save" find Save Autorecover information option. Here you can modify the default properties:
- Should there be an automatic save?
- What is the save frequency, in how many steps should the program do this: 5

🖵 Graphics		^							
Open and Save	* Open and Save								
	Project default path(requires restart)	C:\Users\renata.nagy\							
Units and angles	Image Path	C:\Users\renata.nagy\							
Snap and grid	Project template folder path	C:\ProgramData\Cadli							
> Cursor and marker	Google Drive, Microsoft OneDrive - Download folder	C:\Users\renata.nagy\							
	Enable project backup to your personal cloud account								
User interface	Google Drive								
Item settings	Microsoft OneDrive								
- 0	*Save 3D database (significant increase in size)								
	Transfer settings and files from one computer to another	Edit							
	Migrate custom settings and files from previous releases	Edit							
	Tag/Schedule template folder	C:\Users\renata.nagy\							
	😵 Manage styles								
	🗧 Backup Archive								
	*Save auto recover information								
	Save auto recover information								
	Save frequency (steps)	5 ~							
	Free space now on C:	577487 MByte							
	* IFC Import Properties								
	Import classification database from Excel files	Edit							
	Data filters	Edit							
	Sharing Categories with other users								
	Specify the network location of the shared objects	Edit							
	Shared categories	Edit							
	Synchronization interval in seconds	60							
	✓ Display shared objects with icon in the Design Center								
	Project specific object handling								
	Closing the project the objects stored only in the project are deleted from library.								
Close	The objects used in the project are only available when the project is loaded.	~							
🏟 🏭 🔌 🖉 🔍	🕻 Ground floor V 🚹 🖡 🎝 🗾 Fal	- Teher 🗸 😂 🔻 👔							

It is important to know that this function **does not replace Save**. When you turn off the computer in the normal way, this file is automatically deleted, and if you choose "Exit without save" and you rely on only Save Autorcover function you will lose all modifications on the project you have done since the last save.

In case of large-size projects it's worth increasing the frequency (number of steps). It can be bothering saving a large content after every five steps which may take several seconds.

ļ

ļ

4.4. OneDrive backup restrictions

ARCHLine.XP cannot save a project 100% safely if the file is located in a folder that is synchronized with the OneDrive file storage service.

Saving an ARCHLine.XP project is a complex, multi-step process, and OneDrive may attempt to synchronize due to a change detected during the save process while the save is still in progress. As a result, your project may become damaged and show a file length of 0 because ARCHLine.XP cannot successfully complete saving the project file.

Can the backup folder for the ARCHLine.XP project still be on OneDrive?

It can be, but periodic data loss must be expected, so (as with other CADs) it is **not highly recommended**. It is recommended to exclude from OneDrive synchronization the ... Documents\ARCHLineXP Draw folder. The project files should be saved locally on the computer. However, archiving a project saved on your computer to OneDrive is supported. It is recommended to change the path to the Project folder in the *Options - Open and Save* window. See next section: *Running out of space on your C: drive?*

What can I use OneDrive cloud storage for?

OneDrive can be used for archiving.

4.5. Running out of space on the C: drive?

A common problem is that there is not enough space on the C: drive. Where to install ARCHLine.XP in such a case? It should be noted that the Windows operating system requires at least 10% free space on the C: drive to run properly. Of course, it is recommended to uninstall any unused applications from the computer.

Let's look at where files are placed during installation:

- It is recommended that you install ARCHLine.XP on the C: drive under the *Program Files* folder offered by the installer. You should expect the program to take up about 3 GB of space under *Program Files*.
- In addition to this, the libraries will take up about 5-15 GB (depending on the number of objects, materials, etc. in the library).
- In addition, the ARCHLine XP Draw folder is created under Documents during installation. This may contain projects.
- The Archive folder will be placed under C:\Users\...\AppData\Roaming\cadline\ARCHlineXP2024\Archive, which is a hidden file. As we have seen, by default it is deleted every 4 weeks, with 3 backups per day, so the size of this can grow significantly.

In the case where space on the C: drive is limited and there is enough space on the D: drive, the following 2 folders should be moved to the D:\ drive:

- 1. ARCHLine XP Draw 2. Archive
- It is important not to touch the ARCHLine.XP files under Program Files and ProgramData. Never copy them!

We recommend the following steps:

- To copy the Documents ... ARCHLine XP Draw folder from C: to the D: drive, to the root: D:\ ARCHLine XP Draw
- C:\Users\...\AppData\Roaming\cadline\ARCHlineXP2024\Archive folder is also copied to D:\ ARCHLine XP Draw
- In ARCHLine.XP, in the Options Open and Save window, you need to change the folder paths to the D:\ARCHLineXP Draw folder or its corresponding subfolders.
- Also change the path to the Backup Archive.

Graphics							
	Open and Save						
Open and Save	Project default path(requires restart)	D:\ARCHLineXP Draw\					
Units and angles	Image Path	D:\ARCHLineXP Draw\					
Snap and grid	Project template folder path	D:\ARCHLineXP Draw\					
	Google Drive, Microsoft OneDrive - Download folder	D:\ARCHLineXP Draw\					
K Cursor and marker	Enable project backup to your personal cloud account	······································					
User interface	Google Drive						
Item settings	Microsoft OneDrive						
a) kom som ge	*Save 3D database (significant increase in size)						
	Transfer settings and files from one computer to another	Edit					
	Migrate custom settings and files from previous releases	Edit					
	Tag/Schedule template folder	D:\ARCHLineXP Draw\					
	V Manage styles						
	Sackup Archive						
	* *Save auto recover information						
	Sharing Categories with other users						
	Project specific object handling						
	Second Se						
	A DXF/DWG						
	DWG/DWF/DXF Import path	D:\ARCHLineXP Draw\					
	DXF/DWG import assignments	Edit					
	DXF and DWG export settings	Edit					
	Colour exchange dialog	Edit					
	* Lists						
	✓ Open XLS (Excel) outputs with the built-in spreadsheet handler.						
	Option saved with the project						
	Options with an asterisk character (*) are saved into the project.						
Close	Other options are saved into the registry - affecting all projects						

Restart the program.

- On C:, under Documents, delete the ARCHLine XP Draw folder.
- Also delete the C:\Users\...\AppData\Roaming\cadline\ARCHlineXP2024\Archive folder.
- Then empty the Recycle Bin.

This will significantly increase the space on the C: drive.

Please note:

Do not keep older versions of ARCHLine.XP on your computer. It is recommended to keep the current version and the version before that. Uninstall the older versions.

Accordingly, you should also delete the libraries of already installed versions under ProgramData. These are hidden files, so it is recommended to consult an IT specialist.

4.6. Copy project detail

In case the customer prefers an older version, we can easily copy it into the current project. We will now copy the kitchen created in the Preliminary Course, Kitchen Design workshop into the current project.

- Open the Documents\ARCHlineXP Draw\2024\Workshop_Preliminary\ 4_Kitchen_Design\3_Nagy_Andrea_Kitchen_workshop_FINAL.pro file.
- Select the kitchen, (1) then select Edit \ Copy. (2) After selecting the command, enter the reference point for the copy, which should be the top left wall corner. (3)

Go to the Little John project and select Edit \ Paste. In the floating menu on the right, select Rotate and rotate to the
position shown in the image, then place it in the bottom left corner.

• For optimal workflow, only run one copy of the program at a time, so close the Kitchen workshop file after successful insertion.

4.7. Organizing projects

Proper organization is needed for well-ordered, self-explanatory and easy to use projects. We have to do two important things.

- Handling and organizing layers properly
- Setting and naming views correctly

4.7.1. Organizing layers: Layer variations

The layers are used to group the elements used in the project. As different groups of elements are placed on separate layers, it is possible to modify them together. The layer variations allow you to save different states, so that you can, for example, show only the equipment of one room without having to re-enter the Layer Manager and set the states of the layers one by one.

- The floor plan should be active.
- Open "Layer Manager". In the appearing dialog window, you can find layers.
- Click on the Used layers option.

 Layer Manager

 Move Objects to New Layer

 Layer Walk

 Change to Current Layer

 Activate the layer of selection

 Image: Im

Now you can see, that in this project the objects are placed on three layers: Object, Slab and Wall – Load bearing.

Our aim is to handle the two premises separately in this project: the **Living room** and the **Dining room**. Also, we want to handle the objects, the decoration and the lamps separately in these rooms. This kind of folder system helps the rendering process, it is much quicker to change the views.

Layer Properties Management										
The name of current laye	er:Wa	II - Loa	d bear	ring					Show visible layers only	
Name	On	L	P	Ele	C	Line-type	Line	Description		
Object	` 💡	<u> </u>	6	3946		Simple	0 mm			
Iab Slab	9	<u> </u>	9	22		Simple	0 mm		□ Al layers	
✓Wall - Load bearing	9	_	8	178		Simple L 🔻	0 mm 💌		Used layers	

• Now click on the All layers option.

Now all of the layers in the project will appear. You can see that we created preset layers for the architectural objects (these are automatically assigned to the object types) and the facilities so the architect can easily place the furnishes, lamps and decorations on separate layers. If you need a room that is not included in the list, you can create new layers for them.

🖉 💌 💌 👘	curre	ant idy	er . wali - Ludu Di	earing			-	Search	Show visible layers only
lame	On	L	Printable	Ele	C	Line-type	Line	Description	Layer filters
Athozat	9	8	4	0		Simple	0 mm		
Beam	9	8	6	0		Simple	0 mm		
Ceiling	9	8	8	0		Simple	0 mm		Used layers
Circle	2	8	8	0		Simple	0 mm		
Column	9	8	6	0		Simple	0 mm		
Decor_exterior	8	8	8	0		Simple	0 mm		
Decor_interior	9	8	4	0		Simple	0 mm		
Decoration	9	8	6	0		Simple	0 mm		
Dot	9	8	6	0		Simple	0 mm		
elips		8	a	0		Simple	0 mm		
Group	8	8	6	0		Simple	0 mm		
Hatch	9	8	4	0		Simple	0 mm		
IFC	8	8	a	0		Simple	0 mm		Layer filter restricts the layers displayed in th
Interior - Bathroom - Decor	9	8	6	0		Simple	0 mm		the selected layers onto the layer filter
Interior - Bathroom - Furni	9	8	4	0		Simple	0 mm		and the second s
Interior - Bathroom - Light	9	8	4	0		Simple	0 mm		Variations
Interior - Bedroom - Decor	9	8	6	0		Simple	0 mm		0+
Interior - Bedroom - Furnit	1	8	4	0		Simple	0 mm		
Interior - Bedroom - Light	8	8	5	0		Simple	0 mm		Available variations
Interior - Kitchen - Decor	0	đ	6	697		Simple	0 mm		- All layers
Interior - Kitchen - Electric	0	ď	4	95		Simple	0 mm		
Interior - Kitchen - Furniture	0	ď	6	61		Simple	0 mm		
Interior - Kitchen - Ligthing	0	ď	6	76		Simple	0 mm		
Interior - Livingroom - Decor	9	8	4	0		Simple	0 mm		
Interior - Livingroom - Fur	9	8	6	0		Simple	0 mm		
Interior - Livingroom - Lig	1	8	8	0		Simple	0 mm		
Layer : 1	0	đ	8	0		Simple	0 mm		
Lightning	9	8	6	0		Simple	0 mm		
Lightning - exterior	9	8	8	0		Simple	0 mm		A layer variation saves all the layers with the
Lightning - interior	9	8	4	0		Simple	0 mm		current states. It helps switching between
Line	9	8	a	0		Simple	0 mm		possible layer variations in one step.

As we can see, the layers are prepared for the living room furnishings, but there are no dining room layers. Therefore, let's create 3 new layers for the dining room furnishings.

Creating new layers

ļ

- Click on the Add new layer icon. Now the new layer is created: "Layer : 1".
- Rename it by double clicking on it Interior Dining room Decoration, then hit Enter.
- Now create two new layers for the Furnishing and the Lighting.

You can create new layers only if all the layers are visible.

• After finishing with all three layers, click on "OK" to close the window.

Moving objects to other layers

- Now select all furniture in the Living room area.
- Go to Properties on the left side of the screen and select "Interior Living room Furnishing" layer from the dropdown layer menu.
- Also place the other furniture, lighting and decoration elements on the correct layers.

Layer walk

With Layer walk, you can narrow or expand the appearance of items within a selected layer group. It can also be used to check that the elements have been placed on the correct layers.

It's worth a try, you can work with it very quickly and spectacularly.

Display only the living room furnishings using the CTRL key. The result is as follows:

This makes it very easy to check that all the elements are on the right layer.

Layer variations

Create 3 layer variations, one for the architectural floor plan, one for the living room and one for the dining room.

- Activate the 2D window.
- Open Layer Manager.
- Click on the Used layers option.
- Switch off all layers except the Wall Load bearing wall and Slab layers.
- To create a new layer variation, click on the blue plus icon.
- A new group is created. Click on it with the right mouse button and select the Rename option: Architectural plan.

• Turn on the living room layers by double-clicking on the lock, then create a second group: Living room furnishing plan.

• Turn off the layers for the living room by double-clicking on the yellow light bulb and turn on the layers for the dining room by double-clicking on the lock, then create a third group: **Dining room furnishing plan**.

• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •									Laver filters	
lame	On	L	Printable	Ele	С	Line-type	Line	Description		
Interior - Diningroom - Decor	8	ď	8	120		Simple	0 mm			
Interior - Diningroom - Furniture	9	ď	8	348		Simple	0 mm		All layers	
Interior - Diningroom - Lightning	9	ď	4	98		Simple L 💌	0 mm 💌			
Interior - Kitchen - Decor	9	8	4	697		Simple	0 mm			
Interior - Kitchen - Electrical acc	8	8	e	95		Simple	0 mm			
Interior - Kitchen - Furniture	9	8	a	68		Simple	0 mm			
Interior - Kitchen - Ligthing	8	8	e	76		Simple	0 mm			
Interior - Livingroom - Decor	9	8	6	1892		Simple	0 mm			
Interior - Livingroom - Furniture	8	8	e	1088		Simple	0 mm			
Interior - Livingroom - Lightning	9	8	8	286		Simple	0 mm			
Object	8	8	e	40		Simple	0 mm			
Slab	8	đ	8	28		Simple	0 mm		t and the second state at a large	and the first of the second
									A layer variation saves all the current states. It helps switch	plan

If you select now these variations, you can see that the settings of these layers change based on it.

• Click on OK to close the window.

On the plan in the View Control bar, you can change the variations easily, you don't have to open the Layer Manager every time you want a different variation.

• In the View Control bar, select the desired layer variation from the list. Click on the "3D Hammer" icon to make the 3D view follow the change.

1:100	•	1:1	•	Livingroom furnishing plan	+	Click to select, press Shift to add/deselect
				All layers		
			. <u></u>	Architectural plan		
ng_room_01	Gro	ound floor	(0 mm	Diningroom furnishing plan		×
1/1/1	///	1111	111	Livingroom furnishing plan		

Saving new layers

The new layers are saved automatically only in the project. If you want to save these layers into new projects as well, then you have to save these settings. This is how you can do it:

Select the *Gear icon* in the bottom left corner and select the *Open and Save* tab. Select the **Save current settings for new projects** option and select the **Layer structure** option.

🐟 ARCH INE. 🕏

Graphics			^				
Open and Save	Open and Save						
A Unite and angles	Project default path(requires restart)	C:\Users\renat	ta.nagy\				
	Image Path	C:\Users\renat	ta.nagy\				
Snap and grid	Project template folder path	C:\ProgramDat	ita\Cadli				
Cursor and marker	Google Drive, Microsoft OneDrive - Download folder	C:\Users\renat	ta.nagy\				
K Cursor and marker	Enable project backup to your personal cloud account		Save current settings				
User interface	Google Drive						
Item settings	Microsoft OneDrive		The new projects will start with the selected project settings.				
	Save 3D database (significant increase in size)		The items selected from the list will be saved in the My template:				
	Transfer settings and files from one computer to another	Edit	- Current graphic settings				
	Migrate custom settings and files from previous releases	Edit	- Building and floor structure				
	Tag/Schedule template folder	C:\Users\renat	ta.nagy\ Default styles for all element types				
	A Manage styles		- Active phase and phase filter				
	Network Sharing requires a folder to which all users' computers have access	with network permission.					
	Shared styles package name (create or select)		Would you like to save current settings as new default?				
	Specify the network location of the shared styles (requires restart)	C:\ProgramDat	uta\Cadli				
	Save current settings for new projects	Apply	y 🖂				
	Restore your defaults to factory settings	Apply	y Current graphic settings				
	Export styles	Edit	Ruilding and floor structure				
	Import styles	Edit	Default styles for all element types				
	Backup Archive Backu						
	* *Save auto recover information		□ Active phase and phase filter				
	Save auto recover information						
	Save frequency (steps)	5					
	Free space now on C:	576978 MByte					
	☆ *IFC Import Properties						
	Import classification database from Excel files	Edit					
	Data filters	Edit					
	Sharing Categories with other users		OK				
Close		-	V				

4.7.2. Settings and naming the perspective views

The other essential part of the project organization is setting the **views** properly in the well-ordered projects. If you consistently follow the same logic (even clockwise), to set perspectives in the 3D window and name them appropriately, it will be easier to navigate through them.

When designing a multi-storey building, it is a good idea to put a number in front of the view name, so you can move through the building in order when switching views:

0_Living_room_01 (ground floor - living room - first view)

1_Bathroom_01 (upstairs - bathroom - first view).

• Now move to the 3D window.

• From the Dashboard select the "Perspective dialog" icon.

 Create new views by clicking on the green plus button and rename them according to the example: "Living room_1 "
 The program automatically will put all views in alphabetical order. Always put serial number after the name of the consecutive perspective views.

Dashboard	ņ	×
☆ Perspective view		^
A 1		1

Perspective dialog	Saved vi Kitchen Kitchen Livingro Livingro Livingro	iews _1 _2 pom_1 pom_2 pom_3	
	Camera Camera Z Target Z Angle	 1400 mm 1372 mm 60°	OK Cancel

141

If you follow the instructions above perspective views always will be orderly arranged in your projects, which makes easier and more transparent your work and project.

 Open the following project: ARCHlineXP Draw\2024\Workshop_Intermediate\4_ Project_ Management\Little_John_Living_room_02_Layers

4.8. Managing large-size projects

Project size

The size of the project is defined by 2 parameters:

- File size
- Surfaces in the 3D model

In Windows File manager you can check the size of the file you saved on your computer. This project is approximately 36 MB.

Name	Size	20	Quick 3D model
BDE		R	Build 3D model
Render			Create cut-away 3D view
Saved			Space volume computation
Wall_views		A	3D Section Box
🔃 Little_John_Living_room_01	27 502 KB	4PD	
Little_John_Living_room_02_layer	36 103 KB	R	▼ Lépcső ∨

Surface number

The **Surface** number is displayed in the Build 3D model window.

In the pop-up window you can see that this project currently has **132 180** 3D surfaces. Quit this window with the "Cancel" button.

liews	Level of Geometry	Others
View	Symbolic	
View 2 (Current perspective	Schematic	Ø
	Detailed	Ø
	Ocumentation	Ø
	Construction	1
	Selecting floor plans by storeys for 3D model construction	
	All	
	Element types	
	All	

142

In case you use a mid-range laptop, it is recommended to keep the surface number under **1 000 000**. If the number of surfaces exceeds 2.000.000 surfaces, the program sends a warning and repeats the warning at 5.000.000 surfaces. Take the warning seriously, otherwise the efficiency of your work may be significantly reduced.

The surface boundaries can be changed if necessary under Settings / Item settings / Objects.

Graphics								
Open and Save	Grid nodes X:	5						
	Grid nodes Y:	5						
Onits and angles	☆ Text							
Snap and grid	*High detailed display							
S Cursor and marker	Keep readability when rotated between							
	120°	300°						
User interface	* Plot layout							
Item settings	Place drawing names automatically on plot layout							
	Tracking changes on so the drawings on the plot layout are updated when the ori	\sim						
	Room Maker							
	Minimum wall length	100 mm						
	Minimum wall height	500 mm						
	* *Objects							
	Enable 3D cache for generating KBB elements in 3D							
	Recalculate texture coordinates automatically when replacing a material of an object.							
	Clear 3D acceleration cache							
	*Enable XML acceleration							
	Warning if the number of textures during Skp import exceeds the limit value valid f	50	~					
	Warning message when number of mesh face exceeds the limit during object import	50000	~					
	First warning limit when the sum of 3D surfaces exceeds the given value	2000000						
	Second warning limit when the sum of 3D surfaces exceeds the given value	5000000						
	Warning limit when the number of project materials exceeds the given value	1000	~					
	Specify lighting fixture type during 3DWarehouse downloads							
	Floorplan representation vocabulary	Edit						
	Network settings							
	Delete built-in browser cache, history and cookies							
	A Option saved with the project							
	Options with an asterisk character (*) are saved into the project.							
Close	Other options are saved into the registry - affecting all projects							
🏟 🏭 👌 🖉 [🗼 😂 👁 Living_room_1 🗸 🛉 🖡 🛞 👻 Lépcsé	5 ~	-					

Reducing the size of a project

The size of a project can significantly increase while we are working on it. If you have already received a warning about the surface area of the project, you should definitely take the time to clean up the project, thus reducing its size. This contains four steps:

- Delete unnecessary 3D solids
- Delete too large objects
- Delete objects with too much material
- Delete unused materials in your project

4.8.1. Delete unnecessary 3D solids

There might be 3D solids in the project that were temporarily used during 3D modelling, we did not create objects from them, and accidentally remained in the project.

3D solids only appear in 3D, they do not have a floor plan symbol.

These unnecessarily increase the project size; therefore, we have to delete them.

Open the following project: ARCHlineXP Draw\2024\Workshop_Intermediate\4_Project_ Management\Little_John_Living_room_ 03_3D_body.pro

🔃 Little_John_Living_room_01	27 502 KB		
Little_John_Living_room_02_layer	36 103 KB	Surfaces	165268
Little_John_Living_room_03_3D_body	37 684 KB	Surfaces	

How can we find quickly these 3D solids and delete them from the model?

Activate the 3D view and select the entire model. In the side menu under Properties, select 3D solid and delete them.

• Now click again on Build 3D model tool. As you can see the number of surfaces decreased from 165.268 to 132 351.

4.8.2. Delete too large objects and those contain too much materials

An object downloaded from the 3D Warehouse site or elsewhere may be too large or contain too much material. These objects often complicate and slow down the work and the program significantly. The program warns you in 3 cases:

- When the object is too large, so it contains more than 50 000 polygons
- When the object contains more than 50 materials, or
- When the physical extension is larger than 100 m

Now let's look at an example of too large objects.

- Open the following project file: ARCHlineXP Draw\2024\Workshop_Intermediate\4_Project_ Management\Little_John_Living_room_04_larger.pro
- Open 3D Warehouse, this can find under Ribbon menu / Interior / Place / 3D Warehouse.

File 🛅 🗖		l 🗋 🏓	/ 🗶 🚽 🗃		+ = Edit	View	Building	Interior	Drafting
		\bigcirc	Ħ	Ð	Ł				-
Properties T	Room maker	Material	Single object	3D warehouse	BIM libraries	Tiling ▼	Sweep	Soft furnishing	Lighting
Properties	Room		PI	ace			Decorat	ion	

- In the search field type "crystal chandelier".
- Select "Baccarat Zenith Chandelier crystal" from the Models & Products This object contains 60,405 polygons.

③ 3D Warehouse			×
↔ → △			
I SD Warehouse Get Sketchu	Jp crystal chandelier		X 🔝 Q 🏦 옫 Harosi E. 🗸
Models & Products	s 膏 Collections 👔 Materials		😴 Filters Reset
			Building Products 🗵
costal chandelier		Barcarat Zenith Chandelier crus	
B 2.1 MB △ 48,816	□ 4.6 MB (1 42,439	□ 1.9 MB	□ 4.4 MB
Galla K. 🕁	i Aleks A. 🔯 🛃	🛆 DA SILVA D. 🛛 🖄	😤 Ariana C. 🛛 🖪 🛃
Crystal Chandeller A MB A 398,289	Crystal glass ball and crystal de 11 MB (19,051	CRYSTAL Cellula Inspired Chand 3.55MB Q 214,343	Product Lillian 3 Light Crystal Chandelier 2 2.3 MB (19,786)
🦚 Jamie Lariosa 🛛 🖸 🕁	👌 StarHome S. 🚺 🛃	😞 kodensan 🛛 🔛	🚥 Wayfair.com® Trade 🛛 🛃
Download the object as a Sketc	hl In file		
③ 3D Warehouse Get Sketch	Jp crystal chandelier		X 🛛 Q 🗘 Arrosi E.
		Crystal chandeller.	Download SketchUp File GLB File
			Collada File

• Enter the lamp name, category and click on the light bulb to indicate that this object is a lamp.

Comments (0)

Related Content

• Select the type of the lighting fixture: *Ceiling*

Model Overview

•
	Lighting fixture
Create new item in the library	Çeiling 🔓
Name of the new item in the library	
Crystal chandelier	wall
Category:	
Sub category:	Table
3D Warehouse v	
Producer:	
3D Warehouse v	Standing
Product line	<u> </u>
~	
	TA Shot
BIM parameters OK Cancel	v. Spor

• A warning window will pop up after the download. If you click "No", the object download will be cancelled and the program will not download the object. Now select "Yes", knowing that this object will slow down your work.

Message		
?	The complexity of the imported model can cause speed problems in the project. Do you want to continue?	
	Yes No	

- Place the object on the floor plan.
- Look at the 3D surface number, with the option "Build 3D model". You will see that the number of interfaces has increased significantly, which may again slow down your work.

The previous surface number of 132,350 has increased to 181,060 surfaces.

Now let's look at an example of an object with a lot of material (more than 50 materials).

In the loaded project, we have already placed the kettle teapot object, which contains incorrectly 290 materials.

146



This type of faulty object can cause problems with the program. So, if you accidentally download such an object, a window will pop up after the download warning you that the number of materials on the object exceeds 50. If you choose "**Yes**", the download will take longer and may slow down or later prevent you from working. If you select "**No**" the object will download, but only one material.

Message	×
?	This object contains 290 materials. Using it can cause slow-down in the project. Continue anyway? No means import without materials.
	Yes No

Now save the project under the name Little_John_Living_Room_4_Large_2.pro.

Little_John_Living_room_04_large_2	03/08/2024 15:26	PRO File	48,738 KB
debug	03/08/2024 15:23	Text Document	2 KB
Uittle_John_Living_room_05_cleaned	21/04/2020 12:49	PRO File	26,032 KB
Uittle_John_Living_room_04_large	21/04/2020 12:46	PRO File	47,075 KB
Dittle_John_Living_room_03_3D_body	21/04/2020 12:42	PRO File	37,684 KB
Uittle_John_Living_room_02_layer	21/04/2020 12:39	PRO File	36,103 KB
Little_John_Living_room_01	21/04/2020 12:34	PRO File	27,502 KB
ts size:			

To reduce the size of the project, unnecessary objects with a large surface area, and a lot of material should be deleted from the project. These overly complex objects can be easily found and deleted.

- Activate 3D window.
- Go to Ribbon menu / Dimension / Measure and click on "List of elements".
- In the pop-up dialog window, we can find the 5 objects take the most space in the memory and the 5 items use the most materials. Here you have an option to "Delete selected item" straight away. In case you cannot identify the item, you can use "Show selected item" command. Last two downloaded objects are the largest in both categories. Delete them.

x

Info a	bout	space
--------	------	-------

Property	Value	1
These solids take the most space in the mem	ory:	
Element ID: [3D=3196] [2D=3598]	31148[KB] (3D surface: 76494) (Object: Baccarat Zenit	
Element ID: [3D=205] [2D=1654]	2750[KB] (3D surface:8781) (Object: almohada 3d)	
Element ID: [3D=275] [2D=3776]	2750[KB] (3D surface:8781) (Object: almohada 3d)	1
Element ID: [3D=228] [2D=2542]	2750[KB] (3D surface:8781) (Object: almohada 3d)	. 1
Element ID: [3D=254] [2D=3212]	2750[KB] (3D surface:8781) (Object: almohada 3d)	
These items use the most material:		
Element ID: [3D=4011] [2D=15606]	865 (Object: kettle, teapot, чайник)	- 1
Element ID: [3D=102] [2D=301]	9 (Object: NEG TV Te 1)	
Element ID: [3D=836] [2D=3598]	7 (Object: Baccarat Zenith Chandelier crystal(1))	. 1
Element ID: [3D=100] [2D=238]	6 (Object: candle 11)	. 1
Element ID: [3D=120] [2D=435]	5 (Object: Flower 2)	
٢		>
		1.0

- Now check again the number of surfaces by using Build 3D model tool. By deleting these two large objects the number decreased to 132 351 from 181 060.
- Save project under a new name Little_John_Living_room_04_large_deleted.pro, use "Save project as... "command.

Cleaning object library

You should also clean up the object library in the Design Center of any models that have already been downloaded with too much surface area, so that they are not used in the next project.

To do this, use the File menu - Tools - Cleaning object library command.

File		χ 🖸	🗋 🍼 / 🗑 🚽 🤋 🖛 + ? = Edit View Building Interior Dra
	New project	Q	Drawing recovery manager
	Open project	*	Project Cleaner
B	Save project	X	Cleaning object library
1 🖪	Save project as	۲	Download project from your personal cloud account (Google Drive, Microsoft OneDrive)
	BIM		Logout from your personal cloud account (Google Drive, Microsoft OneDrive)
	Import	. 8	License Assistant
	Export	*	
	Link	*	
Ô	Options		
-	Tools		
	Teamwork	•	

A dialog box filters the contents of the Object library and sorts the items by size or date. In the list on the right, you can collect the items you want to delete and then delete them.



Sort by complexity	~				Delete
List of objects by complexity:			Objects selected to delete		Delete All
Name	Model complexity (surfa ^		Name	Model comp	lexity (surfaces)
DINING SET	254552 (Extra large)		DINING SET	254552 (Ex	tra large)
vasinhos+concreto	234713 (Extra large)		vasinhos+concreto	234713 (Ex	tra large)
Maxliving Mimo Sofa	146755 (Extra large)		Maxliving Mimo Sofa	146755 (Ex	tra large)
kitchen+decoration	137935 (Extra large)		kitchen+decoration	137935 (Ex	tra large)
untitled1575592805	136915 (Extra large)		untitled1575592805	136915 (Ex	tra large)
Bowl of Roses	90194 (Very large)		Bowl of Roses	90194 (Ver	v large)
Radeco ATOM design radiator	88550 (Very large)				1 5- 7
RABALUX RAINA PENDANT 5766	86339 (Very large)	->			
Raccarat Zenith Chandelier crys	76366 (Very large)				
	/				
					OK

Filter 3D Warehouse® by surface number

The 3D Warehouse website also helps to filter out objects with a large surface area.

After entering the search word, select Filter on the right:

For Polygon Count, set the maximum to 50 K.

The page will then only display objects with a maximum of 50,000 polygons. This way, objects with an unnecessarily large surface area count, which ARCHLine.XP does not recommend downloading, will not appear in the list.



4.8.3. Delete unused materials in the project

When you delete an object containing hundreds of materials from the project, the object itself is deleted, but the hundreds of unnecessary materials remain in the Materials – In Model library. As a result, in larger projects, there can be thousands of materials present that increase the project size, slow down the workflow, but are not used. These materials must be deleted.

• Select the **Design Center / Materials / In Model** folder. Here, you can see that there are currently **707 elements** in the project.

The deletion is done with Project Cleaner.

• Save the project under a new name. The new project name should be "Little_John_Living_Room_05_Cleaned.pro".

You need to save the project under a different name so that the original state can be restored if necessary.

- To perform the material cleanup, exit the project and reopen it.
- Select the File menu / Tools / Project Cleaner option.
- Select the Unused materials category. The unused materials will appear in the middle, Items window.
- Select the first and last item while holding down the SHIFT key, then move them to the Removable Items section using the arrow.

In the Project Cleaner, besides unused materials, there are other items that can be deleted, such as sections, views, or schedules.

• Click OK to confirm the settings so that the program can delete the unused materials.

Categories	Items		Removable items		
Floor plan (0)	SketchUp default front (4 kB)		Selected items to delete from project		
Section and elevation (0)	SketchUp default back (4 kB)		*3(571) *3(572)		
Print layout (0)	Metallic_Paint_Gold (4 kB)				
Nood board (0)	LED 5500k (4 kB)		*3(573)		
d view (1)	Glass Crystal (4 kB)		*3(574)		
ink CAD (0)	Color_A05(2) (4 kB)		*3(575)		
ink Image (0)	Yellow Trans(2) (4 kB)		*3(576)		
Inused materials (1320)	Croisillon(2) (5 kB)		*3(577)		
ags (0)	Yellow Solid (4 kB)		SketchUp default front SketchUp default back Metallic_Paint_Gold		
chedules (0)					
tyles - Available in this project only (34)		->			
Styles - Available in all projects (6)			Pearl_Cream		
			LED_5500k		
			Glass_Crystal		
			Color_A05(2)		
			Yellow Trans(2)		
			Croisillon(2)		
			Yellow Solid		
			Total size: 5.94 MB Remove from list	Clear list	
			The cleaning of the project starts by pressing the OK button.		

 Check the number of materials. Click again on Design Center / Materials / In Model. Now the number of the materials decreased from 707 to 107 items. Deleted materials increased the project size unnecessarily.



Des	sign center		₽ ×
[Search in all items]	۹ [2 ×
f	Materials In Model		
<<	Back 707 Elements	Models	Brands
	IN MODEL	V	î
Ħ	MY		<
E	BUILDING	Croisillo	6
E	COLOR CARD		
Ħ	COLOURS		
H	ELECTRICAL ACCESS	ORI Croisillo	
E	FABRICS (TEXTILE, CU	JRT P	
E	GARDEN		



After all these steps it can be seen that our project size significantly decreased from 48 738 KB to 22 250 KB. Thanks to the clearing, more storage space is left on our computer.

Dittle_John_Living_room_04_large_2	03/08/2024 15:26	PRO File	48,738 KB
Little_John_Living_room_04_large_deleted	03/08/2024 15:28	PRO File	36,365 KB
Little_John_Living_room_05_cleaned2	03/08/2024 15:31	PRO File	22,250 KB

If you follow these steps, all your projects will be transparent, traceable and (depending on the performance of your computer) you can work quickly and without disruption.

4.9. Tips to avoid IT problems in 10 points

The finished project is usually large, hundreds of Mb. in size. During its preparation, several IT problems can occur that can make it very difficult to solve the task:

We therefore recommend that you check the following **10-point list** for each project to make sure you are not experiencing the problem. Several of the points will be familiar to you, and we have reviewed them in section *4.8. Managing large-size projects.*

4.9.1. Does the computer meet the recommended system requirements?

The recommended configuration is suitable for preparing a large-scale exam work. A computer that meets the minimum requirements is for creating example projects during the course, but not for exam work or large projects. **Low memory (RAM e.g. 4 GB)** can lead to the "Out of memory" crash.

In this case, the program displays the following message: "The system does not meet the minimum memory requirements required to run the application. Low memory can result in unpredictable behavior."

With DxDiag you can check the parameters of your computer: Click on the Windows start icon and type: **dxdiag**

Search Apps Documents Web	b Settings	Folders Photos ••••
Best match		
Run command		8
Search the web		dxdiag
Q dxdiag - See more search results	>	kun command
Q dxdiag exe	>	🖸 Open

ystem Display 1 Display 2 Sound Input		
This tool reports detailed information about the DirectX components and drivers installed on your system.		
If you know which area is causing the problem, click the appropriate tab above. Otherwise, you can use the "Next Page" button below to visit each page in sequence.	\square	
System Information		
Current Date/Time: 03 August 2024, 15:31:34		
Computer Name: LAPTOP-CQTPVOP0		
Operating System: Windows 11 Home 64-bit (10.0, Build 22631)		
Language: English (Regional Setting: English)		
System Manufacturer: ASUSTEK COMPUTER INC.		
System Model: Strix GL704GV_GL704GV		
BIOS: GL704GV.302		
Processor: Intel(R) Core(TM) i7-8750H CPU @ 2.20GHz (12 CPUs), ~2.2GHz		
Memory: 16384MB RAM		
Page file: 17274MB used, 5103MB available		
DirectX Version: DirectX 12		
Check for WHQL digital signatures		
DxDiag 10.00.22621.3527 64-bit Unicode Copyright © Microsoft. All rights reserved.		

4.9.2. Integrated video card

An integrated video card is not recommended, a dedicated video card is recommended. Check the date of the video card driver. If it is older than 1 year, it is recommended to download the update.

Fezköz		Illesztőprogramok		
LSERVE	~	inesztőpi ogi amok		
Név: NVIDIA GeForce RTX 3050 Ti Laptop GPU		Fő illesztőprogram: nvldumdx.dll,nvldumdx.dll,	nvldumc	
Gyártó: NVIDIA		Verzió: 31.0.15.3179		
Processzor típusa: NVIDIA GeForce RTX 3050 Ti Laptop GPU		Dátum: 4/25/2023 02:00:00		
DAC típusa: Integrated RAMDAC		WHQL embléma: n/a		
Az eszköz típusa: Csak leképezésre alkalmas megjelenítőeszköz		Direct3D DDI: 12		
Összes memória: 20212 MB		Szolgáltatás 12_1,12_0,11_1,11_0,10_	1,10_0,	
Kijelzőmemória 3978 MB		Illesztőprogram típusa: WDDM 2.7		
Megosztott memória: 16234 MB	\sim	<	>	
DirectX-szolgáltatások				
DirectDraw-gyorsítás: Engedélyezve				
Direct3D-gyorsitās: Engedēlyezve				
AGP-mintázatgyorsítás: Engedélyezve				
Megjegyzések				
Nincs probléma.				



4.9.3. Is there enough space on the C:\ drive?

If there is not enough space on C:, there may be a problem with the operation of Windows. In practice, Windows needs at least 10 GB of free space. The recommended size of the C: drive is at least 100 Gb. If there is not enough space on the drive, saving the project may be interrupted. The program will send you a message. In such cases, the computer must be cleaned, e.g., Empty Recycle Bin. More here: Free up disk space in Windows

4.9.4. Is the ARCHLine.XP project save folder on OneDrive?

ARCHLine.XP cannot save a project 100% safely if the file is located in a folder that is synchronized with the OneDrive file storage service. It is therefore **strongly not recommended**. Saving a project may be interrupted. More here: <u>OneDrive issues</u>

The following should be checked regularly throughout the project:

4.9.5. Distant element

Elements located at long distances (several km) cause calculation inaccuracies and errors may occur during work. The program warns about remote elements.

Symptoms:

1. In the optimal view, the floor plan is not visible in the floor plan window Reason: some elements on the floor plan are far from the origin.

2. In axonometric view, the 3D model is only a small point Reason: some elements are far from the rest of the model in 3D.

3. Poor texture quality in 3D view, elements cannot be selected in 3D, etc. Reason: the model is far from the origin.

4. Elements cannot be selected in 3D

Reason: the model is far away from the original or DirectX9 is set instead of DirectX11 in the Options - Display Setup section.

5. The image wall view results empty grey area

Reason: some elements on the floor plan are far from the origin or in perspective, the viewed point is far from the camera.

If this distance is possibly several km, calculation inaccuracy will occur. DirectX 11 uses floating point number representation (NOT double precision!). This means that it cannot be accurate in mm and more than 100 km at a time.

Therefore, it is necessary to check whether there is a distant element:

- on the floor plan,
- in the 3D window,
- or is the perspective object far away, or is the model far away from the origin?

More here: Issues with model being far from origin

4.9.6. Does the number of surfaces in the model exceed 2,000,000?

The program warns you about this. Models with a large number of surfaces slow down work depending on the performance of the machine. When importing objects with more than 50,000 surface numbers, the program sends a warning. A list of elements with a large surface area in the project can be requested. The use of layers is recommended. We recommend the ARCHLine.XP LIVE program for displaying decorative elements with a large number of surfaces.

4.9.7. Are there elements with extremely large surfaces in the Object Library?

Use the Object Library Cleaner!

It's a good idea to delete extremely large items not only from the project, but also from the Object Library, to avoid using them in the next project.

4.9.8. Is there an object in the plan that contains more than 50 materials?

A list of these can be requested, it is recommended to delete them. Such objects are mainly made for game programs, where each surface piece has its own texture. When downloading such objects, the program sends a warning, because errors may occur in the operation of CAD/BIM programs during their use.

4.9.9. Does the number of unused materials in the project exceed several hundred?

Then it is worth cleaning the project, because in most cases the materials of previously downloaded, but no longer used, redundant objects accumulate. Due to the high number of materials occupying a large amount of memory (over 1000), an error may occur during work. The program sends a warning about the high number of materials.

4.9.10. Did the ARCHLine.XP program send a warning from the aforementioned?

It must be taken seriously and the cause must be eliminated!



Workshop 5: KBB, Modelling and furniture design



5. Workshop: KBB - Modelling and furniture design

During this lesson you can learn how to use the furniture design tools in ARCHLine.XP, this way you can easily create customized kitchen and storage cabinets. The following points will be covered:

- Using different fronts on the same cabinet
- Creating fronts with hidden handles
- Creating a custom shaped, curved cabinet
- Creating a custom shaped, curved countertop
- Preparing documentation
- Watch the video of the workshop here: <u>Intermediate Course – Interior design</u>

Refresh your skills

In order to understand this lesson completely, the basic knowledge of the furniture design tools is required. Before starting this workshop, it is recommended to repeat the *Preliminary course - Kitchen design* workshop. This project can be found among the files of the Preliminary course files.

The tutorial videos can be found here: Preliminary Course - Interior design

Start

- Open ARCHLine.XP software.
- Click on Open Project button.
- Open the following project: ...ARCHlineXP Draw\2024\Workshop_Intermediate\5_KBB-Modelling_and_furniture design\01_KBB_Modelling_and_furniture_design_start.pro

Save project as...

- Before starting the work save the project file with another name.
- Choose File / Save project as... command and specify the name and location.

5.1. Adding drawers, changing fronts

During this workshop we will modify the kitchen in the opened project.



• Click on the high cabinet from which the drawers are missing and open its properties.



• In the dialog click on the Dividers tab and add a Single horizontal divider. Before placing the divider with the green tick, activate the *Only division* option.



• Click into the upper division and add a Single drawer with front, then repeat this step in the lower division.

Cabinet	
	 in Bottom in Front Shelf - Single horizontal Divider - Single horizontal Divider - Single horizontal Core front Back Core Top
x • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	***************************************
1/1	● Full Overlay ○ Traditional
single Multiple front with front with single	Opening (%)
	100
Drawers	Automatic refresh on page OK Cancel

• Select the newly added upper drawer using the blue arrows on the left. On the third vertical tab deactivate the Apply the default option.

Ī _		<u> </u>	📽 _ 🖗 _ ଢ 🕞	l	
 ↓ ↓ 1/2 × ↓ <	Apply the default Hide object Use original item size	Walnut panel Wenge	Wenge- mirror mirror 3	Wood Wood11 WS front white front	Uveg
		Rotate X	Rotate Y 0° ~	Rotate Z	
Drawers				Automatic refresh on page	OK Cancel

- Using the blue plus on the right, search for a front named Wood11 front in the library, then close the dialog with the OK button.
- Change the one front of three further cabinets to the *Wood011 front*. To do that select the cabinet and open its properties. On the Doors tab select the front to be modified, then with the learned method change its front to the desired one. You can easily navigate to the front you need by ALT + clicking.



You should have a similar result as the picture above.



5.2. Creating a front with hidden handles

In modern kitchens non-traditional solutions are often used at the handle design. With the handy tools of ARCHLine.XP you can easily create alternative variations.

The Cabinet door command is an extremely flexible tool with which you can define the shape of the front, insert or extract profiles in order to create more unique pieces.

- Start the Cabinet Door command from the Ribbon bar / Interior / KBB group.
- Select Old_Ashtree as the material of the front.
- Select the fifth tab from the left, the Subtract profile tab. With this option we can define a frontal profile (on the first vertical tab on the left) along which the section profile (chosen on the second vertical tab on the left) will be drawn.
- Select the profile named *horizontal1* as the frontal profile.
- The four values on the right indicate the distance of the profile from the edges of the front. Rewrite the upper value to 0, then deactivate the Same offsets option and unlock the bottom padlock. By fixing the two side values we can assure that the front fits on cabinets of all sizes and the handle does not end after a specific length but adjusts to the cabinet size.

Cabinet Door	
	There are no items to list
	a a a b a a
	Came offsets
SUBTRACT profile: Unit doors can be customized with different outer edge, panel raise and framing bead profiles	OK Cancel

• After this select the section profile. This will be a simple rectangle. After selecting it, click on the cogwheel icon on the right to access its properties. Here set the dimensions: width: 40 mm, height: 20 mm. Select the upper left corner as a reference point. This defines the point with which the section profile is connected to the route drawn by the frontal profile. (The appropriate point is different in every situation, so it is possible that you will not find it at the first try.)

This profile operation is important because first we will subtract a profile from the front, then add another, which will be the handle. In order to place the handle 'inside' the front and not 'on' it, we have to subtract a handle profile size part of the front to have space for the other profile (handle) and to prevent it from overhanging.

Edit profile	-				
P	11		Rectangle Simple		
				Mirror on X	
n12	-	13		Mirror on Y	
		Ť		Rotate	
			Uniform 3D scaling opera	ation	
d <u>.</u>	- <u>4</u> p		Width: 40 mm	Height: 20 mm	
Select Profile	Red	raw			
Name	Value				
Height [1 - 100000 mm] Width [1 - 100000 mm]	20 40				
			OK		Cancel

• Close the profile properties and make sure that both green profiles are inside the front, then click on the green tick in the right bottom corner.



- Click on the sixth tab from the right, the Add profile tab. This option operates on the same principle as the Subtract profile option with the difference that here a profile will be added not subtracted.
- Select the profile named *horizontal1* as the frontal profile and set its distance from the front edges the same way as at the subtracted profile.
- After this, on the second vertical tab on the left select the profile named *aluminium2* as the section profile. Click on the cogwheel icon to access its properties. Its dimensions do not require further modifications, just select the upper left corner as the new reference point of the profile.





Edit profile		
Select Profile	d ¹⁷ d ¹ d ⁰ d ¹⁹ d ¹ d ⁰ d ¹⁹ d ¹⁹	aluminium2 Mirror on X Mirror on Y Rotate Uniform 3D scaling operation Width: Height: 40 mm 20 mm
Name Width [0.0001 - n.a. mm] Height [0.0001 - n.a. mm]	Value 40 20	OK Cancel

• In the third vertical tab on the left, set a unique material for the added profile, then press the green tick to place it on the front.



• Save the front on the last tab with another name: front with hidden handle 01 - ashtree.

5.2.1. Creating alternative front variations

In order to vary the handle positions and front colors in the kitchen we need to create alternative variations from the front created previously.

• Let's create the front with the *Pine_011* material. It can be done by selecting the second vertical tab on the Frontal profile tab and here choose *Pine_011* material.

Cabinet Door	8 A	
		 ADD profile: Unit doors can SUBTRACT profile: Unit door
		2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2
Material direction	Shiny>2 Dark_grey e Pine_011 stained bee Beech	OK Cancel

• After this save the new front with another name: front with hidden handle 01 - pine

Let's create the other two alternatives. It will have the handle at the bottom of the front. The easiest way to do so is to modify the position of the subtracted and added profiles.

• Click on the Subtracted profile tab and open the upper lock and close the one at the bottom.

\sim			Width		Same offsets
			600 mm	\sim	0 mm 🗸
		X	Height		
front chate		Ó	0 mm	~	
dral h	norizontal1		1		
					â
					Resize profile
					Rescale \vee

• After this, modify the reference point of the section profile to the upper right corner by clicking on the cogwheel icon on the second vertical tab on the left.





- Repeat these modifications on the Add profile tab.
- Save this front with another name: front with hidden handle 02 - pine
- After this, modify the material to *Old_Ashtree* on the first tab, then save it with another name on the last tab: *front with hidden handle 02 ashtree*.
- As a last step, change the fronts on the cabinets to the appropriate one. This can be done by selecting the front in the Design Center and with the drag and drop method place it to the cabinet. This method, however, will only modify the default fronts of the cabinet. If you would like to modify a front which is not a default one, you can do it by selecting it in the Cabinet dialog window.





For curved elements, we need to modify the panel connections so that the hidden handle does not cut into the side panels.

- Select the curved element, then go to Properties.
- Go to the Custom Edge Properties tab and use the arrow keys to select the two edges you want to modify. Change the connection to Beveled Edge.



- Save the modified item with the Save button to overwrite the original cabinet.
- Also modify the panel settings on the curved element next to it, then save the furniture.

5.3. Creating a curved cabinet

In ARCHLine.XP you have the possibility to create furniture with unique shapes. In this example we will create a custom shaped, curved cabinet to the place marked with blue lines on the layout.

- Start the Cabinet command from the Ribbon bar / Interior / KBB group.
- First, set the default front of the cabinet on the second tab. This will be the front with hidden handle 01 ashtree.
- Hide the default handle since the chosen front already has built-in handles. This can be done
 on the second vertical tab on the left.

Default door front and handle selection. You can also apply custom drawers, shelves and legs.	Bedford dad Debba_c Debba, shelf dad abinet_h abinet	c Gilmore h TV leg andle handle si	 	Offset left/ 0 mm Offset fron 0 mm Offset dow Offset dow	right (red) Verticated by the second
	Rotate X Rotate Y 0°	Rotate Z		Z ,	J
General unit door properties		Automatic refresh on page	Ð	ОК	Cancel

- Set the default side panels of the cabinet on the third tab. This will be the Old ashtree front.
- On the sixth tab you can select the shape of the new cabinet. Choose the custom option here. On the appearing tab click on the star icon on the right to create a new shape.







We will create the new shape of the cabinet using the 3D shape tool. You can edit the default solid cube with the help of three profiles (front, side and top view). The active profile is always the red one. In this case the top profile should be the active one. Click on the star icon to define the profile.

3D Shape	5 d	1
Width 1000 mm Image: Constraint of the second seco	ngle sle	Resize profile Rescale V
Sizes and profiles	Automatic refresh on page	OK Cancel

• The command automatically activates the 2D layout, where you can draw the shape of the cabinet along the blue line.

•



• When you have finished drawing, click on the Close button on the Ribbon bar. The new top profile is automatically engraved on the top of default cube, and now it is modified to the desired shape.

3D Shape	
Width 606.3 mm Construction Depth Construction Custom \$41.8 mm Fill Custom Height Fill Fill 1000 mm Custom E8	
Sizes and profiles	Automatic refresh on page OK Cancel

 Press the OK button and the program switches back to the cabinet dialog, where the cabinet is created from the customized shape.





- Click on the first tab and set the dimensions. The total height of the cabinet is 850 mm, the carcass height is 700 mm, and the space for legs is 150 mm.
- On the seventh tab you can customize the panel properties. This means that you can change flexibly the type of the panels, so a you can make a front panel from a side panel; or a top panel can be turned into a back panel. This is useful in situations like this one.

In the next step we will modify the curved side panel of the cabinet to a front; so, a door can be assigned to it. Navigate with the blue arrows on the left side until the color of the contour of the curved panel is marked with red. After this, select the Front type from the options below.



Click on the Doors tab and assign a door to the curved part and set its opening direction to the right.

Cabinet							
	Ð					Generation Sector Sect	- Left or Right
RI							≈ ₽ & &
1/1 Left or Right	Flip up Flip down	Fix 2, 3 or 4 sided	Sliding Mul	tiple te	 Full Overlay Traditional Left Right Opening (%) 	100	
Doors				Automatic	refresh on page	ОК	Cancel

• After this, click on the other front and add a fix door.



- On the penultimate tab, switch off the automatic dimensioning.
- As a last step, save the cabinet to the library.
- Close the dialog and place the cabinet.
- You should have a similar result as the picture below.





5.3.1. Creating a curved countertop

In the following, we will create the countertop. In order to fit to the kitchen cabinets, you have to turn few of its edges into curved ones.

• Activate the floor plan window and select the existing worksheet, then Component mode from the Local menu. Component mode allows you to edit each side of the element flexibly, move nodes around or insert new ones.



• In Component mode adjust the contour of the countertop to the blue line by moving and inserting nodes, and turning edges into curved ones. You should get a final result similar to the picture below.



5.3.2. Modifying the plinth

In the next step we will adjust the plinth to the curved cabinet.

- Activate the floorplan window.
- Click on the last node of the plinth and in the appearing edge menu select the Move node option.





Move it to the beginning to the curved part, then click on it again and select the Append line option from the appearing menu.



• Adjust the endpoint to the end of the curved part, then by clicking on the new part select the *Turn into curved edge* option from the appearing menu. Adjust the arc to the blue line.

•



5.4. Modify fronts

5.4.1. Drawers with multiple handles

KBB furniture fronts can accommodate more than one handle, so you can add different handles to the same drawer or door.

- Select the drawer cabinet you created above and enter the editor.
- Select the top drawer by ALT+clicking on it, then go to the Door front tab from the horizontal tabs and select the Pine011 front, then go to the Handle tab.
- Uncheck the "Apply the default" option and then select the rectangle handle. Use custom position and select the top left position. Change the Offset down/up value to -100 mm.
- Click the plus button to add the second handle.

173





• Select the same handle, move the position to the top right position and add the item by clicking on the plus button.

19		6	6							÷I	∲ • 🗇 🧐 🤇	× & &
	Apply the default Use original handle Hide object Use custom position O O O O O	Bar handle st	Bedford shelf	Debba_c abinet_h	Debba_c abinet_h	Gilmore TV leg	Handle 6790	rectangl handle	Knob	+ * @ /	Offset left	/right (red) nm v v nt/back (green) nm v v wn/up (blue)
Drawers	Stretched	Rotate X	~	Rotate Y 0°	~	Rotate 0°	Z V Autor	Mirror matic refree	sh on page	√ Ø €	ок	Cancel

You can copy the finished handles to another drawer in a single movement.

• Standing on the two-handle drawer, select the copy button, then select the bottom drawer and press the apply button. On the front tab, uncheck the "Apply the default" option and select Old ashtree front.



5.4.2. Change the color of fronts

Creating new fronts is a time-consuming process. It is possible to change the color of the fronts with a much quicker solution.

- Go to the Design Centre and select Materials Colors Other. Find the Grey and Dark Grey colors.
- Using the drag and drop method, drag the Grey material onto one of the light-colored fronts and select the "Replacing one material with another" option.
- Select the Dark Grey material and drag it onto the Dark Brown front. To replace, select the same option as for the grey.



5.5. Creating documentation

5.5.1. Create an exploded view

The exploded view helps to understand the structure of the cabinets and provides information to facilitate the manufacturing process. The exploded view only works for cabinets created with the KBB tool.

• Select Ribbon bar / Documentation / Quantity take-off / Cabinet exploded view / Create and select one of the furniture items, or select the furniture and from the local menu click Cabinet exploded view from the local menu.

The resulting diagram is free to edit and modify once you have entered the group.



5.5.2. Create tags

- Select Ribbon bar / Documentation / Tags / Create Tags.
- Select Interior from the Discipline and Cabinet from the Types.



Under Tag parameters, you can select which parameters the tag should list. You can turn off the visibility of existing parameters or add new ones from the middle list.

- Turn off the visibility of the ID, Floor and Style parameters and add the Components and quantities property. Fill in the Prefix column for the Width, Depth, Height parameters with the prefixes W, D, H.
- Use the Apply and OK buttons to confirm the settings, then select Menu Ribbon / Tags / Place Tags.

Tag creation								;
Discipline:	Group]	Tags	Cabinet	t tag	~	New	Delete
Interior ~	Common properties				mport	Export	Export all	Delete All
	General properties		-					1
Types ^	Calculated values		Tag	parameters		1		
3D Shape	Pset_FurnitureTypeCommon (1)			Parameter Name		Visible	Prefix	Suffix
Brise soleil	ARCHline.XP Common (5)		1	ID				
Cabinet			2	Floor		<u> </u>		
Cabinet Door		_	3	Style				
Countertop	Name		4	Туре		\checkmark		
Curtain	View		5	Width		\checkmark	W	
Electrical Accessory	Туре		6	Depth		\checkmark	D	
Grid ceiling	Relative elevation	->	7	Height		\checkmark	Н	
Gutter	Width		8	Components and quantiti	ies	\checkmark		
IFC element	Depth							
LED lighting	Height							
Light sources	Product ID							
Loft	Room							
Luminous text	Components and quantities							
Moulding	Image							
Object	View with scaling							
Picture								
Plain ceiling				UP Down				Delete
Roman blind								
Smart Object assembly 🗸	From existing object					ОК	Cancel	Apply

- Click OK to accept the pop-up window, which will show the parameters you have previously set.
- In the next window you can format the style of the tags. Now click OK to accept.
- Select the cabinet to be tagged and place the tag on the floor plan.



There is a live connection between the tag and the furniture, if you change the parameters of the furniture, the tag will also be changed by selecting Update Tag from the Local menu of the tag.

5.5.3. Creating an Excel list

At the end of the work, we can create the Excel file, which is necessary for the production of the cabinets, with a few clicks.

- Start the Ribbon bar / Documentation / Quantity take-off / Excel list command.
- In the appearing dialog select the Interior Calculation option.

	Element types
Make Excel report	Image: State
Building calculation	Lectrical Accession y
H Interior Calculation	Moulding Object Picture on wall Pipe and Duct Smart Object assembly
Tiling	
m ² Rooms	Ignore invisible layers and its items
* Terrain calculation	Select elements
List by manufacturers	OK Cancel

- From the appearing list, select the types to be listed, in this case Cabinet, and turn off the export of BIM parameters.
- Finally save the Excel worksheet, which opens automatically if Excel is installed on your computer.

In the Furniture detailed tab, you will find the components of each cabinet, the number of pieces and their dimensions.

Curved counter part 2					
		Base unit	715	1140	850
	4 Simple Circular Leg		40	150	40
	1 Old_Ashtree fornt		467	696	20
	1 Arc cabinet side panel		539	700	20
	1 Arc cabinet side panel		701	1092	20
	1 Arc cabinet side panel		1012	700	20
	1 Arc cabinet side panel		1092	680	20
2 door curved clossure wall cabinet 2		Wall unit	300	600	660
	1 Old_Ashtree fornt		296	656	20
	1 Old_Ashtree fornt		467	656	20
	1 Back Corpus Panel		596	656	3
	2 Arc cabinet side panel		297	580	20
	1 Arc cabinet side panel		297	660	20
Curved counter part 1		Base unit	1140	600 660 656 20 656 20 656 3 580 20 660 20 716 850 696 20 716 850 696 20 710 20	
	1 Pine011 front		467	696	20
	4 Simple Circular Leg		40	150	40
	1 Arc cabinet side panel		540	700	20
	1 Arc cabinet side panel		984	700	20
	2 Arc cabinet side panel		1072	682	20
	1 Arc cabinet side panel		1120	700	20

> Project properties Furniture summary Furniture detailed Summary (+)

And in the Summary tab, you can see how many m2 of surface area will be needed from the given panels and fronts.

5.5.4. Using color schemes

Color scheme is a graphical representation that is used to group elements or spaces according to any of their properties and to present them in a way that is easy to understand. A color scheme is based on an element type, its parameter and its assigned value. The color schemes by property can be saved in templates, so that by changing the templates, the model can be presented according to different aspects.

The color schemes help to understand the content of the project.



In this project, we will group and color the cabinets according to their width: cabinets 400 mm or narrower, 600 mm or narrower, and 600 mm or wider will be displayed in a different color.

- Activate the floor plan.
- Select Ribbon bar / Annotate / Color Fill / Color schemes / Color schemes command.



- In the pop-up window, select Interior (1) from the Discipline, and within that select Cabinet (2). Select the Width parameter (3) from the middle list and add it by clicking on the button (4).
- Select the No more than action, then enter the value 400 mm. Select a color of your choice. (5)
- Select Add and create the following line: up to 600 mm. Select a color of your choice. (6)
- Finally, create the last line: Greater than 600 mm. Select a color of your choice. (7)

Col	or schemes												×
Disciplin	^{e:} 1												
Interior	- · · · ·	Group	^			Color schemes							^
		Common properties				Cabinet-Width						Þ	
		General properties				Doors						1	
0	3D Shape	Calculated values					s area					A	
0	Brise soleil	Pset FurnitureTypeCommon (1)				Rooms by net	area					//	
•	Cabinet 2	ARCHline XP Common (5)				Slabs						/>	
0	Cabinet Door	Add custom BIM parameter	~			Walls by thickn	ACC					, A	~ ~
	Countertop			_									
Ö	Electrical Accessory	Name				New	Delete		Delete All	Import		Export	
õ	Grid ceiling	All elements									Save as	dobal	
0	Gutter	Туре			4						are a	giobai	
0	IFC element	Relative elevation				Colour		Property	Ope	eration	Valu	е	
0	LED lighting	Width	3					Width	No	mor 🖂	400 1	nm	5
0	Light sources	Depth			+			Width	No	mor 🗸	600 1	nm	7
0	Loft	Height			-			Width	Gre	ater than \vee	600 1	nm	<u> </u>
0	Luminous text	Product ID									1		•
0	Moulding	Beem											
0	Object	Room		_									
	Picture Plain coiling												
Ö	Roman blind												
õ	Smart Object assem												
0	Smart Object parts					<							>
0	Venetian blind												
0	Vertical blind					Import from	n floor plan		6	Add		Delete	
												Delete All	
		From existing object		1									
									ОК			Cancel	
											_		

The outlines of the cabinets on the floor plan have been changed based on the color schemes. In the side menu you can change or turn off the color schemes.



Color schemes can also be displayed in the 3D view.

Activate the 3D window and select Cabinet-Width from the side menu under Color schemes.






Workshop 6: Upholstered furniture based on profiles



6. Workshop: Upholstered furniture based on profiles

In this workshop, you will learn to use the ARCHLine.XP Smart Objects, allowing you to create custom upholstered furniture. During the training, you will become familiar with several functions and solutions, including the use of the Loft tool for creating furniture legs, the Smart Object parts tool for supporting the creation of seating surfaces and back panels, as well as Assembled object tool.

- Creating Esmeralda ottoman components
- Assemble Esmeralda ottoman
- Drawing profiles for Marseille chair
- Creating components of Marseille chair
- Assemble Marseille chair
- Open your browser and watch the video tutorial here.

Start

- Start ARCHLine.XP software on your computer.
- Click on New project button.

Save project

- Before starting your work, save it under a new name.
- Choose File / Save project command and enter your project name and save it under your preferred folder.

6.1. Esmeralda ottoman

During this workshop first, we create Esmeralda ottoman, as it is in the picture below. Before doing anything, let's check how many parts the ottoman has. There are three components such as:

- ✤ legs,
- the base and
- cushioned seating.

After analyzing the furniture, you can start the design.



6.1.1. Creating Esmeralda legs

First, we create legs.

As you can see, these are particular legs, not a normal cuboid. Profiles on the top and at the bottom are different, and the whole 3D shape is slanted.

 Select from Ribbon menu / Interior / Smart Objects / Loft command. Now we use the Loft tool to create a 3D solid or surface in the space between several cross-sections. We pull a drawn cross-section profile all along a specified path for the lofted solid.

Interior	Drafting	Annotate	Documentation	MEP			
	$\overline{\mathbf{k}}$	°)°					
Soft furnishing	Lighting •	Lighting Plan	Electrical accesso	ry KBB	Sma	rt Objects	Sketch Mod
tion		Lighti	ng		0	Loft	
1:100 🔹 🗕	- 1:20	-	▼ Click	to select, pre:	×× ××	Smart Obj	ect parts
		Floor plan	Ground floor (0 mm))	;:: *::	Assembled	d object



• The path is going to be a vertical profile. On the first tab, set the height to 140 mm.



On the second tab, define the section profiles.

- The bottom profile is 30x30 mm rectangle. Enter the new width and heights values. Click on the refresh button to see the changes.
- Add the top section profile, by clicking on the green cross icon (1), then enter its values (width: 50; height:50 mm) (2). Now
 you have to define its position on the path. This profile is on the top; therefore, move the slider to the value 100% to the
 right side (3). Finally, click on the green tick to apply changes (4).

Loft	×
	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
3 2/2 1 EB Entrance ifcassish Leg Leg Leg Leg Go(19/25 door ON ape section p s	Position on the path 140 mm 100% 0 mm Width 50 mm Somoth Fit 60% Sharp 0% Sincoth Fit 0.00 Resize profile 0.00 Join to previous 0.00 Resize profile 0.00 100 M 4
Section profiles	Automatic refresh on page OK Cancel

184

When we thoroughly checked the leg, we saw that the basic shape is a truncated pyramid, which has two vertical sides and two slanted sides. To get this shape, we have to modify the reference points of the profiles.

• Now the top profile is active as it is highlighted with red. So, if you click on the cogwheel, in the appearing "Edit profile" window you can designate the new reference point. That should be the left bottom corner. Now click on "Ok" to accept changes.

Now in the "Loft" window, you can see that the center point of the bottom profile is connected with the reference point of the top profile. The section profile is pushed to the side, so we have to repeat the same at the bottom.



 Let's change the bottom reference point. Click on the blue arrow to swap between profiles; the selected profile is activated and marked with red.



Click on the profile properties and set the reference point. Here this should also be the bottom left corner point.

Edit profile		×
f_1	Leg section profile 01 sq	uare
		Mirror on X Mirror on Y
	33	Rotate
	Uniform 3D scaling ope	eration
	Width: 100 mm	Height: 100 mm
Select Profile Re	draw	
Name Value Width [0.0001 - n.a. mm] 100 Height [0.0001 - n.a. mm] 100		
	ок	Cancel

Now the 3D shape of the leg has the desired shape; two sides are vertical, others are slant.

- On the next tab, select the material. We use "Egzot03" for legs.
- On the next tab under "General settings" set the type of the representation in 2D. We recommend to use the Simplified version.
- Finally, save the leg. On the last tab by clicking on the "Save as "command, you can give the name, category, subcategory. In this case we recommend to use Living room as the main category, and accessories for sub-category. Components and other furniture parts are good to save under this section. If you like, you can enter the producer's name here too.



Loft			
	Create new item in the library	×	
	Name of the new item in the library:		
	Esmeralda leg	~	
	Category:		
	LIVING ROOM	~	
	Sub category:		
	Accessories	~	
	Producer:		
	CadLine		
	BIM parameters	OK Cancel	A R
Save the current item into the library, or select a new	one to edit		
] [-	- [-]]		Save as
Amboise Ceiling Ceiling console_J _lab_01 Main Ru Molding eg	dad esmerald Gilmore Leg 01 Leg 02 a_leg TV leg	Leg_gray Marseille OvalnyP 100x10 _leg_01 ult	
	Description		✓ Restore default from:
Save		Automatic refresh on page	OK Cancel

• Finally, place the leg on the floor plan.

6.1.2. Create the base for Esmeralda ottoman

The next session is about to create the seat of the ottoman.

• For this use Ribbon menu / Interior / Smart Objects and choose Smart Object parts command.

Interior	Drafting	Annotate	Documentation MI	EP			
	$\overline{\overleftarrow{\mathbf{x}}}$	°L_S					2
Soft furnishing	Lighting	Lighting Plan	Electrical accessory	KBB	Sma	rt Objects ▼	Sketch Mod
on		Lightin	ng		0	Loft	e
:100 🝷 -	100 ▼ - 1:20 ▼ Click to select, pre:			×× ××	Smart Obje	ect parts	
		Floor plan	Ground floor (0 mm)	5	<u>وت</u> ع	Assembled	l object

• In the appearing dialogue set the horizontal orientation.

Smart Object parts						×
10 🚔 🛉 🍎 🧒	*•* 🖉 🖬				6 4	A 2
Orientation Horizontal V	Base profile width 600 mm Base profile height 800 mm Thickness 100 mm Center	Width 600mm Height 100mm Depth 800mm	Round all edges Side rounding 0 mm Front rounding 0 mm Back rounding 0 mm	Surface resolution Medium		
Position and sizes			Au	tomatic refresh on page	ОК	Cancel

• On the fourth tab, you can set the frontal profile, select from the list "Frontal profile 1". There are two frontal profiles, one with rounded edges, the other one without these.



- Now go back to the first tab, under position and sizes set the Base profile width to 600 mm, Base profile height to 450 mm and Thickness to 100 mm (1).
- Set the surface resolution to high (2).
- Round all edges to 10 mm (3).



- On the fifth tab, you can select materials from the Library, now choose "Cream_01".
- Finally, on the last tab, save the base by clicking "Save as" command. The category should be Living room, for subcategory we recommend to use accessories for furniture components. Now enter the producer's name, which could be the model manufacturer.
- Now place it on the floor plan.

6.1.3. Create Esmeralda seat cushion

Let's continue our work on the seat cushion.

- Go to Ribbon menu / Interior / Smart Objects and select "Smart Object Parts" command.
- The seat cushion is similar to the base, therefore open the previously created base. Go to the last tab and select the Esmeralda base from favorites then save it under a new name.
- Next, under "Position and sizes" tab set the new parameters. The Base profile width and height remain the same, but change the Thickness to 160 mm.
- Edges are rounded, keep the value at the same: 10 mm.



Let's get familiar with decoration effects. Tools for effects are stored on two tabs next to material settings. One is adding decoration to the top; the other is adding to the bottom alternatively if you have a vertical 3D shape to the front and the back.

- Pillow effect is added to the cushion; which you can create in the following way. Select the first decoration effect tab, which adds effects to the top side.
- Select "Pillow" effect (1) and set the padding depth to 100 mm (2). This value indicates how much the pillow effect is rising from the top of the item. To apply changes, click on green tick (3). As you can see, the padding depth is adding to the base height.

Smart Object parts	×
1/1 Tufted Tufted Nailing Pillow Sewing	Affected area Full surface V
Fffects 2	

Save the changes on the seat cushion, go to last tab and press "Save". Overwrite the changes on Esmeralda seat cushion
and place it on the floor plan.

6.1.4. How to assemble Esmeralda ottoman

As we have created all three components for the Esmeralda ottoman, now the next step is to put them together.

• Open "Assembled objects" command from the Smart Objects group.

Interior	Drafting	Annotate	Documentation	MEP			
	$\overline{}$						
Soft furnishing	Lighting T	Lighting Plan	Electrical access	ory KBB	Sma	rt Objects ▼	Sketch Mod
ion		Lighti	ng		<u>()</u>	Loft	e
:100 -	- 1:20	-	▼ Clic	k to select, pre	× × × ×	Smart Obj	ect parts
		Floor plan -	Ground floor (0 mr	n)	• <u>·</u> ···	Assembled	l object

- First select Esmeralda base. Select the new item from the library by pressing the blue cross.
- The selected item appears. If the selected item is red in the dialogue window, that means the item has not been placed there yet. Therefore, click on the green tick.



If we choose another item now, this is highlighted in red which refers to its selected status.

Let's add legs to the bottom of the Esmeralda base.

• Now click on the green cross icon. By default, the program puts the new item on top of the previously placed item. Now select from the library Living room / Accessories / Esmeralda leg.



• You can see that the program placed the new item in the middle of the base with the leg center point. Switch off Relative coordinates to make it easier to position the leg. Move the leg: Along the blue axis (downward), minus 140 mm; along the red axis (to the left), minus 265 mm; and along the green axis (forward), 185 mm.

nart Object assembly		~	
	Height: 140 mm		
a Ta	Width: 50 mm	-	
-	Depth-50 mm		
		1	AA
Esmerald a_base a_seat_c		Offset left/right (red) Offset left/right (red) Udfset fortyback (green) Offset fortyback (green) Offset down/up (blue) Offset down/up (blue) Offset down/up (blue)	R R m m

- Add the following leg. Click on the green plus button, then position it: Along the blue axis (downward), minus 140mm; along the red axis (to the right), 265mm; and along the green axis (forward), 185mm.
- After adding the third leg, adjust the values as follows: Along the blue axis (downward), minus 140mm; along the red axis (to the right), 265mm; and along the green axis (backward), minus 185mm.
- The position values for the fourth leg are: Along the blue axis (downward), minus 140mm; along the red axis (to the left), minus 265mm; and along the green axis (backward), minus 185mm.
- You finished with placing legs. However, not all legs are positioned correctly. The leg is in a good position when its two
 vertical sides are facing outside. We have to adjust legs accordingly. Select the leg and set the value "Turn right (blue)" to
 90, 180 or 270 degrees.



• The final task is to place the seat cushion on top of the Esmeralda ottoman. For this, select the base then add the seat cushion from the library / Living room / Accessories category. The software automatically places it in the middle, finally click on the green tick to create it.





- Now the Esmeralda ottoman is assembled. As a final step, save it in the Library on the last tab. Click on "Save as" button; don't forget to give the producer's name.
- Finally place it on the floor plan.

6.1.5. How to modify assembled object?

Let's check the difference between the original and the newly created Esmeralda Ottoman. There is a tiny dissimilarity. Between the base and the cushion seat, there is a little more space at the original one. The aim is to adjust this gap without making it too large so that we could see through between them. For this, we have to modify the newly assembled furniture. Whenever we create a new furniture with the "Smart object" tools, by double-clicking on the item again, the "Smart Object Assembly" dialogue window opens up and here can modify any components. In this special case we will adjust seat cushion.

- Select the cushion in the Smart Object Assembly dialogue window, then click on the pencil icon. This way, you can go back to the Smart Object Parts dialogue window.
- Here, you can see that the pillow effect was only added onto the top side and not to the bottom. If you click on the second
 decoration effect tab, there you can add padding depth to the bottom. The padding depth value is 100 mm. Click on the
 green tick to apply changes. Now the pillow effect nicely appears.

፼ 🛎 🛎 🙋	6 9 9 8 8
Image: Constraint of the second se	Affected area Full surface

- Save the changes, then go back to Smart Object Assembly dialog.
- If the Offset down/up value is zero, the bottom of the seat cushion will be placed right on the base. Now change this value
 to minus 30 mm, this way the pillow effect will nicely pushed into the base.

Smart Object assembly					×
	<i>a</i> n -	-1		Offset left/right (red)	Width 600 mm
Amboise_la b_01 Chair back	Circular crista Seat Shape crista	il Esmeralda Esmerald; alap láb lue)	a Esmeralda párna	Offset down/up (blue)	Height 240 mm Depth 450 mm
You can adjust the placement plane and	0° v 0° reference point of this object by clickin	✓ Mirror ✓ g the stickers on the 3d preview	Relative coordinates	on page OK	Cancel

• Now save the changes and close the dialogue window.

Whenever you want to use the newly created ottoman, simply find it in the Library under Living room / Armchair subcategory.

6.2. Marseille chair

The following example will be more exclusive chair. We will show how to create Marseille chair. We have found it on the internet, and we have only three parameters such as the depth, height and length. Also, we found three photos see below them.





The photo of the back of the chair will be handy for us later on. Using the parameters mentioned above, let's start our work. First, we have to investigate what makes this chair special and also analyze how the components are built-up, such as the **cushion seat**, **curved legs**, **curved back panel**.

Start

Open the project which has already included the ready model and profiles before you start the work. Here you can find the project:

...ARCHlineXP Draw\2024\Course_Intermediate\6_Upholstered_furniture\Marseille_chair.pro

6.2.1. Drawing profiles

The profile of back of the chair

Now let's see the profile of the back, how it can be created.

Import the previously mentioned photo of the back chair:
 ...ARCHlineXP Draw\2024\Course_Intermediate\6_Upholstered_furniture\Photos
 From Ribbon menu / Drafting / Raster image choose "Place" command, or use drag&drop to place it on the floorplan.

[+	C		2~~		2D]	30	ī.
xt	Point •	Ellipse	Raster	r image ▼	G	roup T	3D T	New profile
			-	Place				

The photo is not scaled, but suitable to get the profile of the back panel. To work with a scaled back panel first, we have to calibrate it.

Click on the chair and from the local menu choose "Calibrate" command. The height of the chair is 1170 mm; using this
value, you can calibrate the chair. Draw a straight line starting from the bottom of the leg to the top of the back. Holding
Shift down, you can easily draw a vertical line. In the pop-up dialogue window enter 1170mm the height of the chair.

Nearest point		
	ARCHLine.XP	×
	Input the real world distance between the points	
•	New value: 1.17 m	
A	ОК	Cancel

This is a perspective image and not suitable for getting more information about the chair. We aim to get the shape of the back of the chair. This photo is scaled now; we have to draw its profile.

Use Polyline command from Ribbon menu / Drafting.

		• • *) 🥑 🖉	 X - 	×]	7	A +? ⁺	Edit View	Build	ling	Interior	Drafting
Line	Polyline	C Rectangle	+ Circle	Arc	Hatch	T Text	+ Point	Ellipse	Raster image	[2D] Group	3D 3D	New profile	Create

• We are going to draw the half of the profile of the chair. First, select the "Half division point" from the snapping options and define the half division point of the back panel. The option can be found on the toolbar at the bottom.

×4	Distance from intersection
0+0 1/2	Midpoint between two selected points
0	Center point
-	

 Draw a line on the top; after placing its endpoint, the program automatically sets the starting point of the polyline in the half division point. From here, you can start drawing the profile.



- First draw a line then an arc. You can draw an arc by using three points. The first is given, then select the endpoint, finally
 a middle point which helps to define the arc.
- Continue the drawing with a line and a smooth arc. To draw the arc, select option from the pop-up menu, first select *Smooth* then *Arc* option.
- For the next line, select "No smooth" command.
- Continue with an arc.
- Draw the last line until the perpendicular projection of the half division point. Close the drawing command, the half of the profile is ready.
- Select this profile and from the local menu choose "Mirror a copy" command.
- This way, the missing part of the profile is created. Now the profile is completed. Now move it next to the photo.



Next, we have to draw the upper part of the back panel. This is necessary because the back is not the same everywhere. If you check the model from a bit closer, you can see that the pillow effect is smaller on legs, then on the other parts. We have to define another profile to reach this pillow effect.

- Select the profile and create another copy of it.
- Try to find the seat height and start to draw a straight line from there.



• Use Delete between point command from the top toolbar to remove unnecessary lines. The second profile is ready.



To complete the chair back profile, we need the front profile and the previously created top profile. Also, the back of the chair is curved. Therefore, this is a vertical base profile, and we use for modelling.

- Draw an arc; the height is 1170 mm.
- The curve of the back panel leans a bit backwards. It is not a regular arc as this one is drawn here. Lean backwards the profile by moving the endpoint.

Seat profile

Let's look at the next item, the seat. To create it, we will use a rectangle.

• Use the Draw - Rectangle command to draw a rectangle of your choice. Click on the rectangle and use the dimension lines to change its size: 500x500. We already know that the total length of the chair is 500 mm and depth 580 mm, which includes the back of the chair. We assume the size of a rectangle will be enough for the seat.

If you check the photos, then you can see that we have to fillet edges. There are more options to do that.

 From the local menu, select "Edit" then "Fillet" command. From the appearing menu now, you can choose how to round edges by using radius, diameter etc. If you click on the other side, the selected method will be applied for rounding.

So, we can create the seat this way. However, in our example, it looks a little bit different; the arc is not fitting so nicely.

- Place a rectangle again and inside draw an arc from the half division point until the quarterpoint by using the arc command.
- Mirror the arc by using Mirror a copy command.







• Then use "Delete between points" command to remove unnecessary lines. The top view profile of the seat is ready.

Leg profile

One more profile needs to be created for legs. Here we have to draw an arc again; the leg is 350 mm high and curved.

- Draw an arc which is 350 mm high.
- · Lean it backwards slightly by moving the endpoints.



Now we created all profiles for the Marseille chair. Delete these items and use Smart Object commands to create the chair components.

6.2.2. Creating Marseille legs

Once we have created the profiles for the modelling, let's continue with the creation of the components. As we have seen, we need three different components: the leg, the seat and the back. We will continue with the leg.

- Select from Ribbon menu / Interior / Smart Objects then Loft command. It means we draw a profile along a selected path.
- First, select the path to use for drawing the profile. In this case, this is a special one, therefore click on the yellow start icon and choose "Custom profile" option. Here you can select, the previously drawn profile on the floorplan.
- Now choose from Ribbon menu / Profile editor mode the "Select an item" command and select the leg profile with one click.



198

× - Ā	 Profile Editor 	mode						
R	또도 또 ④	[0]	Ē	E	<u> </u>	\sim	\checkmark	×
Closed loop	Multiple profile	Edit boundary	Select an item	Select from list	Last defined outline	Select connected lines	Finish	Cancel
	Dra	w					Edi	itor

• When the profile is selected, then the software automatically brings up the Loft dialogue window. We recommend to set the high resolution and define the bottom and top ending to horizontal.



- The next step is to set the size of the top profile on the leg. It is a 50*50 mm rectangle. Set the parameters on the second tab.
- Set the size at the bottom that is a 10*10 mm rectangle. For this, click on the green plus icon and enter the parameters. Now set the position on the path. When you finished, apply changes by pressing the green tick.

Loft	×
2/2 fuggoleges ifcassishap 	Position on the path 354.9 mm 100% 0 mm Width 0% 0% 10 mm Smooth Fit 0% isharp Connection Offset 10 mm 3 bin to previous Rescale 3 oin to next
Section profiles	Automatic refresh on page OK Cancel

 It is optional to add a third profile which is a 30*30 mm rectangle. Change its position on the path by moving the slider; the shape of the leg will also change. We also recommend to set the Smooth fit to Smooth.

Loft	×
2/3 friz2 fuggoleges ifcassishap kagylo_1 kagylo_2 Leg section profile 01 s	Position on the path 63% 131.3 mm 223.6 mm 63% 131.3 mm Width Smooth Fit 0% • 30 m Smooth Fit Connection Offset 30 m Join to previous 0.00 • Resize profile Join to next 0.00 •
Section profiles	Automatic refresh on page OK Cancel

- We select the material on the third tab.
- Finally, save the leg on the last tab. Click on "Save as..." first enter the name, then category. The category the Dining room; then we recommend to save the leg under Accessories sub-category. All furniture components should be saved here. Enter the producer's name, Wenga.
- Now place the chair on the floor plan.

6.2.3. Create the seat cushion

The next component is the seat cushion which we will create for Marseille chair.

- Select "Smart Object Parts" from the "Smart Object" menu.
- Set the seat cushion position to horizontal.

Smart Object parts						×
2 🖌 🐐 🖊 🔗	🔹 🔖 🚺 🖬				a a	A 2
Orientation Horizontal	Base profile width 600 mm Base profile height 800 mm Thickness 100 mm Center V	Width 600 mm Height 100 mm Depth 800 mm	Round all edges Side rounding 0 mm Front rounding 0 mm Back rounding 0 mm V	Surface resolution Medium V		
Position and sizes			Auto	matic refresh on page	ОК	Cancel



• Set the frontal profile on the fourth profile. Click on the yellow star icon and from the floorplan select the seat profile. By selecting the *Closed loop – Click on inner point of an area* option, you have the possibility to select an existing profile to get the form.

File 🖿 🗄 🎧 🖓 🐰	0 0 0		- - =x= ["	T +? ⁺ ≠ Profile	Editor mode				
$\Box \bigcirc \Box$	\diamond	$(\mathbf{+})$	R	또도 또 ⊕	[0]	13	Ξ	3	🗸 🗙
Polygon Arc Rectangle	Rectangle Iw	Circle	Closed loop	Multiple profile	Edit boundary	Select an item	Select from list	Room	Finish Cancel
									Editor
State •	- All		Click q	n inner point of a	n area	• [1:100 -	None	-
Dashboard	å ×	Floor	+ O Point o	of profile and islan	ds +				
No style	¢		Chain	one by one		∠ Incli	nation 154°20'	mm) *	

• On the first tab, set the parameters. The base profile width is 500 mm, the base profile height is 500 mm, and the thickness is 100 mm. The resolution is high.

Now round edges Smart Object parts	s, sides and fr	ont will be 20	mm, and the	back rounding w	ill be 1	10 mm.	×
👰 🏽 🐳 🖊 🐼	* * 🛛 🖬					6 9 9	RR
Orientation Horizontal V	Base profile width 500 mm V Base profile height 500 mm V Thickness 100 mm V Thickness orientation Center V	Width 500 mm Height 100 mm Depth 500 mm	Round all edges Side rounding 20 mm V Front rounding 20 mm V Back rounding 10 mm V	Surface resolution High			
Position and sizes				Automatic refresh on page	0	ОК	Cancel

- Now Set the material on the 5th tab. Choose *Cream_01*.
- On the following next two tab, you can add effects to the seat. On the first tab, you can set the top effects; on the second, you can add effects to the bottom. Now we will add pillow effect to the top. The padding depth should be 50 mm. Click on the green tick to apply changes.

Smart Object parts		×
🖾 🚔 🕷 🥐 💦 🖉 🗖		6 9 9 8 8
1/1 Tufted Tufted Nailing Pillow	Sewing	Affected area Full surface v
Effects	Padding depth 50 mm V Automatik	c refresh on page OK Cancel

• Final step is to save the seat. On the last tab, click on "Save as... "command, first enter the name and the category. The category should be the Dining room, choose Accessories for sub-category. Enter the name of the producer, which should be Wenga.

It is crucial to save components before closing the dialogue window. If we close the dialogue without saving the component, then always place it on the floorplan. If none of these happen, then we could lose our work. In case we placed the item on the floorplan, but that is still unsaved that we could do that anytime. Select the item on the floorplan, choose the properties; this will open the Smart Object Parts dialogue window, here you can save the item.

6.2.4. Create the back of Marseille chair

There is one more component missing, that is the back of the chair. We will continue the work modelling this.

- Select Smart Object Parts.
- The back profile of the chair is a vertical item, so this setting is correct.

	RR
Orientation Base profile width Vidth Round all edges Surface resolution 600 mm 600 mm 600 mm Side rounding Medium Medium Base profile height Height 0 mm Image: Surface resolution Image: Surface resolution 1800 mm 900 mm 900 mm Image: Surface resolution Image: Surface resolution 100 mm 100 mm 100 mm Image: Surface resolution Image: Surface resolution 100 mm 100 mm 100 mm Image: Surface resolution Image: Surface resolution Center 0 mm 0 mm Image: Surface resolution Image: Surface resolution	
Position and sizes Automatic refresh on page OK OK	Cancel



• On the fourth tab, define the frontal profile. Select it from the floorplan, by clicking on the yellow star icon. Here, we have to use the "Closed loop – Click on inner point of an area" command and click inside the profile.

We now have the back profile part, but there is still a problem with the dimensions.

Smart Object parts		×
		a 🕫 🗠 😕 🖉
Custom profile alap Frontal Frontal Profile 2 Profile 3 Frontal Profile 4 Frontal Profile 5 Profile 6	Frontal profile 7 Frontal profile 8 Marseille_c hair_profile	
Frontal profile	Automatic refresh on page	OK Cancel

On the first tab, we can set the parameters. Here we have to mention that so far, there was no need to use the second and the third tab. Here we can customize the vertical and the horizontal base profiles.

In the case of the Marseille chair, the vertical base profile is an arc. Select this arc from the floorplan, for this use "Select an item" command. Select the arc then define the reference point with one click.

Now the software will pull over the back-frontal profile on this vertical base profile.

Smart Object parts	×
Custom profile Chairback Marseille_c Marseille_c Paris_chair_ profile006 Vertical Vertical hair_profile hair_profile profile_05 profile006 base profile base profile	Vertical Vertical te base profile base profile Vertical Vertica
Vertical guide	Automatic refresh on page OK Cancel

It is important to note that the height of the back cannot be modified on the first tab. It happens because the vertical base profile defines the height.

202

.



- It works as above-mentioned in the same way on the horizontal base profile. In our case, we do not have to modify it. So, the width will not be defined by the horizontal base profile. Here we leave unchanged the horizontal line as a base profile.
- Now go back to the first tab, the vertical base profile defines the height, but we should set the length, which is 430 mm, and the depth is 40 mm. The resolution is high, and the rounding is 20 mm. In case of the back of the chair, the rounding value cannot be more than this value.



• The next, we add pillow effect on the front. The padding depth should be 30 mm and affects the full area.

Smart Object parts	×
12 🕷 🕷 🏘 🗞 🚺 🔂 🖬	a 🕫 🗢 🔎
1/1 Tufted and Nailing Pillow Sewing	Affected area Full surface
Padding depth 30 mm	Automatic refresh on page OK Cancel

In this case, the pillow effect is more significant on the backside. Therefore, we add another pillow effect and the affected area will be a customized area.

• Click on the green cross icon to add further effect. Now select from the drop-down menu the "Custom area" option.

:D		1	RP
	Affected area Rul surface Rul surface Rul surface Reduced area Rul surface Reduced area Rul surface Reduced area Rul surface Reduced area Rul surface Reduced area Rul surface Reduced area Rul surface Rul surface Reduced area Rul surface Rul surfa		
	Padding depth 30 mm V		√ ⊘
Effects	Automatic refresh on page	ОК	Cancel

- The customized area can be given by using the yellow star icon. The program offers the chair back profile. We have to fit it right on top of the smaller back seat profile. Then we have to use the "Closed loop" command to click inside this profile. As you can see the second pillow effect is created on the upper part of the back chair.
- Add further effect, like "Tufted" nailed shape. The padding shape and padding radius should be 50 mm. Click on the green tick to create the effects.



Smart Object parts		×
		₽ ♥ ♥ ₽
 Image: A start of the start of	Affected area	Offset left / right 0 mm
Padding shape Padding radius Padding depth S0 mm V	0° V	Spacing vertical

Now set the nailing properties, our aim to place the nailing effect in one row. You can reach this if you half the length 430 mm, so 215 mm will be the value for the horizontal spacing. The vertical spacing will be 250 mm. Finally set the front/back offset to 50 mm.

Smart Object parts	×
II. 🐞 🛊 🖊 🐟 🚺 📦 D 🖬	
Image: Constraint of the second se	Affected area Custom area Custom area Offset left / right 0 mm Offset front / back 50 mm Spacing horizontal Born Custom 2 Spacing vertical 250 mm 250 mm Spacing wertical
Effects	Automatic refresh on page OK Cancel

- Finally set the material Cream_01.
- The back chair is ready. You have to save it in the library. Use "Save as ..." command, the category is the Dining room, sub-category is Accessories, producer is Wenga.
- Now place the back chair next to other parts.

6.2.5. Assemble Marseille chair

The last task is to assemble the Marseille chair components.

- Select Smart objects / Assembled object command.
- First, you have to select the components from the library. Place the back of the chair first. You can find this component in the Accessories subcategory of the Dining room category.



• The component appears in red in the dialogue. It means that the back of the chair has not been placed yet. Click on the green tick to do so.

Smart Object assembly	×
Amboise_la b_01 Chair back Chair leg Seat Shape Cristal Seat Shape	Image: Simple state Offset left/right (red) Width Image: Simple state
Turn up (red) Turn forward (green) Turn right (blue) 0° 0° 0°	
You can place an object by selecting one from the list and defining a placement height!	Automatic refresh on page OK Cancel

- Add the subsequent parts: the legs. First, click on the green cross icon.
- Find the legs in the library.
- It is placed on the top of the back, so it needs to be positioned. Move it 0 mm along the blue axis, 200 mm along the red axis and minus 400 mm along the green axis.

Smart Object assembly
Height: 350 mm Width: 57 mm Depth 50 mm
Image: Simple Simple Simple Trapezoi Wenga Wenga Wenga Wenga Wenga Marseille hair leg Image: Simple Trapezoi d Seat S Cannes b Cannes b Cannes b Cannes s Chair_ba Image: Simple Trapezoi d Seat S Cannes b Cannes b Cannes s Chair_ba Image: Simple Trapezoi d Seat S Cannes b Cannes b Cannes s Chair_ba Image: Simple Trapezoi d Seat S Cannes b Cannes b Cannes s Chair_ba Image: Simple Trapezoi d Seat S Cannes b Cannes b Cannes s Chair_ba Image: Simple Trapezoi d Seat S Cannes b Cannes b Cannes s Chair_ba Image: Simple Trapezoi d Seat S Cannes b Cannes b Cannes s Chair_ba Image: Simple Trapezoi d Seat S Cannes b Cannes b Cannes s Chair_ba Image: Simple Trapezoi d Seat S Cannes b Cannes b Cannes s Chair_ba Image: Simple Trapezoi d Seat S Cannes b Cannes b Cannes s Chair_ba Image: Simple Trapezoi d Seat S Cannes b Cannes b Cannes s Chair_ba Image: Simple Trapezoi d Seat S Cannes b Cannes b Cannes s Chair_ba Image: Simple Trapezoi d Seat S Cannes b Cannes b Cannes s Chair_ba Image: Simple Trapezoi d Seat S Cannes b Cannes b Cannes s Chair_ba Image: Simple Trapezoi d Seat S Cannes b

- The next element that we place is going to be the other leg, so leave the leg selected and click on the green plus icon.
- Move the leg so that its position is 0 mm along the blue axis, minus 200 mm along the red axis and minus 400 mm along the green axis. One more thing to note here. You must turn right the foot 180 degrees along the blue axis.



- Let's place the seat cushion. Click on the green plus.
- Select the seat cushion from the library.
- The height of the seat cushion will be 350 cm, since that was the height of the feet. This means that you need to offset it by 350 cm along the blue axis.

Smart Object assembly	×
	A 2
↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓	Vidth 300 mm
Paris_seat_Rectangula Seat 1 Simple Simple Simple Simple sofa_classic 01 r Seat Shap Curvy Recta Curvy Trape Rectangula Trapezoid C _alap_1 Offset down/up (blue)	ieignt 172.3 mm)epth 557.4 mm
Turn up (red) Turn right (blue) 0° 0° 0° 0° 0° 0°	position object
You can adjust the placement plane and reference point of this object by clicking the stickers on the 3d preview! Automatic refresh on page OK	Cancel

Move the seat cushion to the right position along the green axis.





• The last task is to place the legs in the right position. After selecting, move it -520 mm along the green axis. If you do not know the exact value, you can move it by using the arrows.

mart Object assembly	×
Height: 350 Width: 57-cp Depth 50 m	mm gm m
A Simple Simple Trapezoi Wenga Wenga Wenga Wenga Wenga Mars Curvy Tra Trapezoi d Seat S Cannes a Cannes b Cannes p Cannes s Cannes s Chair Curvy Tra Trapezoi d Seat S Cannes a Cannes b Cannes p Cannes s Cannes s Chair Turn up (red) Turn forward (green) Turn right (blue)	eille MarsilleC p b ab construction offset left/right (red) width source offset left/right (red) width source offset front/back (green) Height 1172 mm offset down/up (blue) Depth 623 mm
0° V 0° V 180° V Mirror Relati	ve coordinates

- Move the other leg to the right place too. Move it -520 mm along the green axis.
- The chair is ready. The final task is to save it in the Library. Name the chair and save it to the Dining room category and Chair subcategory. You can also give the name of the producer.
- Now you can place it on the floor plan.

In the future, the chair is available from the Design Center / Objects / Dining room / Chair subcategory, where you can find the original and your chair as well.



Workshop 7: Stairs and railing



7. Workshop: Stairs and railing

In this lesson, you can learn how to create stairs with different geometry and their railing.

- Placement and editing stairwell with U-shaped stairs and its expanded railing
- Creating a gallery
- Placement and editing of a Spiral Stairs
- Customized railing
- Customized stairs
- Steel-framed stairs
- You can watch a video of the workshop here.

Opening and saving project

First download the "Workshop Projects 2024 - Intermediate Course" from our website, then install it if it is not already installed. It contains the projects for the intermediate course workshops. https://www.archlinexp.com/enrollments/courses/intermediate-course

How to start

- Start ARCHLine.XP software
- Click on "Open Project" button
- Open the following project file without any furniture ... \ARCHlineXP Draw\2024\Workshop_Intermediate\7_Stair_and_Railing\Stair_and_Railing_START.

Save project

- Before doing anything, first you must save the project under a different name.
- Choose File menu / Save project as command then you can give the new project name and location to be saved.

7.1. Placing stairwell and stairs

The first type of stairs we are going to create in the project will be a U-shaped stair with expanded railing in a stairwell.

Activate the floor plan window, then go to the Ground floor.

We will place stairs on this level:



- Go to Ribbon bar / Building / Stair. Here you can find tools for creating and editing stairs.
- Select U-form category and "U-form spiral turn" option.



•

Building	Interior	Drafting	Anno	otate	Document	ation	MEP	
	7 ~		~~~	1	pp.	ß		
Truss Sla	ab Roof ▼	Ceiling T	Stair	Ramp	Railing	Room ar	nd area	Room si
Structure			Straight					-
	- 1 :	100 -			Ē			le
	Library C	Ground (0 mi	U form					
// // / /								ral turn I
////		11/1	L form				2 10111 301	run cum

Move the cursor over to that area where you will place it, and define its four-corner point.



• After placing the fourth corner point the stairs will be automatically created.



7.1.1. Modifying properties of the previously placed stairs

When you placed the stairs, modify its properties. To do this, click on any points of it, and select the pencil icon from the floating menu.

• Now the Stair window will appear. Set the following values:

Floor height:

Activate the "Take the floor height" option, this value will be automatically overwritten as per the project to 300 cm.



Action and entry parameters:

Unchanged now, since these will be derived from the number of the steps. These parameters should fall within that range is defined by standards. If they don't, the program will indicate in red. The stairs can be placed in the plan anyway.



Number of the steps:

It can be changed here. Enter the new value 19.

246		
NTTTT	n = 10	
1357	11 - 13	

• n1, n2: In the case of winded stair, the values of n1, n2 define the number of non-winded steps on the straight side. If you want staircases of the same size, the two values must be the same. Both should be 6.

24			
PH T	n1 = 6	n2 =	6
13	··· -		

Width:

It is shown here, which is currently 100 cm.



Side parameters:

These three values show the length on each side of the stairs, shown below:

The padlock must be opened before modification.

280 cm
220 cm 🗎
280 cm 🗎



Rounded radius:

Rounded radius can be found at the bottom .:

K 5 11111		
R	10 cm	

When you finished with the settings, close the dialog window by pressing "OK". Now the program will create the stairs with the modified parameters.

Active the 3D window, switch to that view point from where the stairs can be well presented.





7.1.2. Create handrail

In the next few steps, we will add railing to the previously created stairs.

- Select the stairs and open its properties.
- Click on "General properties" tab.
- Activate the style on right side, as the handrail only goes up on the right side of the stairs, and select the "Steel profile" type.

II Stair				×	
Stair Calculator			^		
Constal properties	Ŝ General				
General properties	Layer	Stair 01	~		
Support	Colour				
	Line type	Simple Line	~		
Step geometry	Line weights	0 mm	~		
Representation on the floor above	Draw Order	8- Bottom-most	\sim		
	Railing				
	Railing automatically added to left side				
	Regenerate				
	Railing	Acrylic railing	~		
	Railing automatically added to right side	\checkmark			
	Regenerate				
	Railing	Steel profile	~		
	Representation in 2D				
	Nosing:	Along the stair	~		
	Nosing line-type	Szaggatott1	~		
	Section line	Dotted above the section line	~		
	Partial line-type	Szaggatott	~		
	Cutting elevation	1000 mm			
	Cutting line direction	20 °			
	Parallel distance	100 mm			
	Draw walking line	V			
	Walking line arrow	1 4	~		
	Cut out landings on walking line				
	Walking line before landing				
	Text on walking line				
	Numbering (50% of current font size)				
	Walking line backward				
	Arrow fit the box				
	Show geometry text		~		
BIM Parameters	Normál lépcső) (M		OK Cancel	

• Close the window with OK, and the program creates the railing.

The railing follows the stairs' line and goes up. The railing is a separate element, so the stairs and railing can be selected separately.

Further changes should be implemented to use this stair in practice.

- Select railing and open its properties.
- Select Primary balusters tab and then set the followings (1):
- Change the distance of the first and last balustrade to 0 (2),
- Activate the Clear spacing between balusters instead of Center to center spacing, its value will be 120 mm. (3)
- Offset from path will be -30 mm. (4)
- Activate Aligning the bottom of balusters to staircase, and set the Bottom ending condition to perpendicularly ending. (5,6)
- Now go to Handrail option. Set Offset from path to -30 mm. (7,8)
- Click OK to close the window, now the railing is finished.


Since our building consists of several levels, the stairs should continue. The simplest way is to copy the existing stairs and railing to other levels.



217

🐟 A R C H | I N E.🕏

- Activate the floor plan window.
- Select both, the stairs and the railing, holding down CTRL key, then open Edit levels dialog window.
- Select Copy objects to another floor.

Edit	levels
Lone	

	e e e				List of buildings
Num	Name	Bottom eleva	Height	State	Le Copy objects to other floor
3	Level 3	10000 mm	3000 mm	Off	0 mm
2	Level 2	6000 mm	4000 mm	Off	0 mm
1	Level 1	3000 mm	3000 mm	Off	0 mm
0	Ground	0 mm	3000 mm	Active	0 mm Edit

• In the popup dialog window, select the first and second level, and then click OK to finish copying.

Select floors			×
All buildings	Number Name	Bottom eleva	Pseudo Copies Full copy Rectangle profile Polygon profile
			OK Cancel

- There is another faster and easier way to create a copy to other floor. Select items to be copied on the floor plan, then on the property grid next to "Copy to other floor" option, choose the requested floor. Click on OK to finish.
 - Go to the first level and enter the properties of the stairs there.
 - In the General properties, select the Representation 2D option with section line.

Representation in 2D					
Nosing:	Along the stair	\sim			
Nosing line-type	Szaggatott1	\sim			
Section line	With section line	\sim			
Partial line-type	No section line				
Cutting elevation	With section line				
Cutting line direction	Dotted above the section line	Dotted above the section line			
Cutting line direction	Contour-line above the section line				
Parallel distance	Contour-line below the section line				
Draw walking line					

- Go to the second level and select the properties of the stairs there.
- Under Support, turn off the 3D creation option, and under General properties, select No section line for 2D representation. Clear the barrier on the second level.

General properties	Connection to the upper slab	
Support	A: 100 mm B: 100 mm C: 300 mm]
Step geometry	Connection to the bottom slab	
Representation on the floor above	A: 100 mm B: 100 mm D: 150 mm E: 200 mm C: 300 mm	
		^
	Base Elevation	0 mm
	3D creation	
	Cut the walls	No cutting 🗸
	Waist slab material	Bright_white
	Construct the landing like a slab	

7.2. Create gallery

Before moving forward, now create gallery on both floors. These galleries will be made of timber slabs. Let's see how to create them.

- The floor plan window is active.
- Go to the first level, then make the ground level visible by clicking on the light bulb icon next to it.



 Use the Ribbon menu / Building / Slab / Slab in Sketch mode command. Draw around the slab line, starting from the top right-hand corner and moving clockwise.



- First select the slab and edit its properties.
- Make sure that all sides are of the same material.
- Change the top material to Wood-pine type.



- Set the total thickness to minus 100 mm.
- To set the structural properties click on "Beams and block flooring system".

Redraw]		
	× Visualization		
	Colour		
	Line weights	0 mm	~
	Line type	Simple Line	\ \
	Layer	21_Födém1	
	Priority	8- Bottom-most	
	The slab border doesn't display	on the floor plan in print	
	Display 2D Fills	R:0 G:0 B:0	
	3D fixed		
	Same materials		
	Top material	🛞 Wood-pine	
	Side material	📲 Wood-pine	
	Bottom material	Wood-pine	
	* Constrains		
	Base offset from the floor	0 mm	~
	Total thickness	-100 mm	~
	Slab type	Slab	V
Eloor level: Omn	Cut the walls	No cutting	1
	Cut by roofs	No cutting	1
	Visible on the floor above.	Simple Line	-
	Visible on the floor below	Simple Line	
	U-value	U-value: Not calculated	
	Width of border-strip not to be h	0 mm	
General properties			
Slab layers			
Beams and block flooring system			

• In the appearing dialog window under "Beams in slab", activate "Create" option.

s in slab	_		
🔶 W	Visualization		
H	Colour		
	Line weights	0 mm	<u> </u>
	Line type	Szaggatott	×
	Beam 2D display (if its own	layer is activated)	
B	Display of beam sign allow	ed	
	Representation by centerlin	e	
		Exchange endings	
	Bottom (start) ending	Perpendicular ending	
clay block	Top (other) ending	Vertical ending	
	Beam layer	1. Layer(100 mm)	~
	Beams in slab		
	Create		
	Туре	Use profile	~
	Profile	Rectangle Simple	
	A	0 mm	
	В	1000 mm	
В	С	-200 mm	
	w	140 mm	
	Н	190 mm	
s along the holes	Material	😸 Wood-pine	
	Regenerate		
	Slab clay block		
	Create		
WH	Туре	EB 60/19/25	
	Size: 0 mmx0 mm		
B	Additional slab clay blocks	Edit	
C	Lx	33 mm	
	Ly	-2 mm	
		0 mm	

- Select rectangle simple profile by clicking on E-24 style. This is the current profile.
- In Edit Profile window set the width to 100 mm and the height to 200 mm. After selecting it, set the main beam parameters.
- The value "A" defines the distance between the beam ends and the slab. Here can be set that the beam ends should be at a certain distance from the slab or be exactly next to each other. Leave this at 0, so that the beams will reach the edge of the slab.
- "B" stands for the distance between beams. Now set this value 1,000 mm.

- "C" defines that height we can raise beams against the lower plane of the slab. Overwrite this value to -200 mm, this way the beam is placed under the 100 mm layer of the slab.
- Finally set the material "Wood-pine".
- In the Visualization set the color to dark grey and the line type to Dashed.
- When you finished copy the gallery created on the first floor to the second floor. Now go to "Edit level". Click on the Copy
 objects to another floor. In the appearing dialog window select second floor and click on OK. Now the copying has
 finished.
- Finally modify the direction of the Beams in slab if needed. Select the gallery and choose from the local menu Beams in Slab / Span direction.



• Hold SHIFT button down and modify the direction by 90 degrees. It is important to hold SHIFT key down, this will secure that we could modify the direction along a straight line.



222



Now repeat this procedure on the second level.

7.3. Placing Spiral Stair

The next step we will place a Spiral stair, which will be the passage between the galleries.

- Activate the floor plan window.
- Go to Level 1. We will place the spiral stair where blue circle is on the floor plan, let's place the center point here.



Go to Ribbon menu / Building / Stairs and from Spiral select "N spiral" stairs from the list.

•



-	1
Right	tside
A Widt	h
Mirro	or
Close	:

• Place it in the middle of the pre-drawn circle.



• Give the starting point of the staircase. Here it is very important the distance and direction. Click on the right side of the circle so that the first line is horizontal.



With the second point, you need to specify how big a circle the staircase should describe. Since we are creating a 360° staircase, click on the starting point of the staircase circle.



7.3.1. Modify Spiral stairs properties

- When the stairs are placed modify its properties. Click on the stair, then select "pencil" icon.
- First, choose the last step to be the slab.



- The values for step in and step-up haven't been updated.
- Now modify the number of steps to 18.



• The difference between the starting and end point is 360°. This means that the stair runs along a whole circle.



225

• The width should be 100 cm.



• To get a radius of 10 cm, rewrite the total width of the staircase to 220 cm after unlocking the padlock.



• The last parameter helps to define the walk line. Along this line the program automatically calculates the values of tread and riser. The walk line of the spiral stair is not in the middle. This should be closer to the outer circle somewhere around the 2/3 of the total width. It means that the walk line will be 66 % away from the center point and that way the tread will be wider outside.

	1	
66 %		
		_

• Now close the window by pressing **OK** and changes will be applied.

This stair is concrete we like some lighter structure instead. On the other hand, we have to cut the slab and place railing. Let's edit its properties.

- First, we modify the visual presentation in 3D. Activate 3D window and change the viewpoint from where the stairs look good.
- Click on the stairs and check its properties.



- In order to make changes on the structure click on Support tab.
- Turn off "Waist slab" and switch on the "Support". This command refers to the support representation which follows the steps straight or the bottom edge of the steps.
- Sides of stairs are different, so we will place a column inside. Therefore, switch off the "Same on both side" option.
- Set the material to Beech.

I Stair				×
Stair Calculator	Support			_
General properties	Connection to the upper slab			
Support	A: 100 mm B: 100 mm	C: 300 mm		
Step geometry	Connection to the bottom slab			
Representation on the floor above	A: 100 mm B: 100 mm D: 1	50 mm E: 200 mm C: 300 mm		
	Waict clab material		· ^	
	Construct the landing like a slab			
	Waist slab	Thickness 150 mm		
		Thickness of landings 253 mm 🗸		
	Stair stringer			1
		The stair stringer doesn't display on the floor plan in print		1
		Position Middle		
	Middle	chile Diabt dr	$ + \forall \forall X \land X \lor $	
		Offset from stair side 0 mm		
	Right side			
		Style Right str	ř la	
		Offset from stair side 0 mm		
	Tread	Material Beech		
		Nosing depth 20 mm		
		Tread thickness 40 mm		
	Riser board	Riser board material Wood66		
		Riser board thickness 20 mm		
	Support	Support material Wood66	-	
	Same on both sides		~	
BIM Parameters	Normál lépcső] ю о	OK Cancel	

Go further down, then select Sharp from The Right support type. Close the dialog by clicking on OK.

٠

I Stair				×
Stair Calculator	Support			
General properties	Connection to the upper slab			
Support	A: 100 mm B: 100 mm	C: 300 mm		
Step geometry	Connection to the bottom slab			
Representation on the floor above	A: 100 mm B: 100 mm C	o: 150 mm E: 200 mm C: 300 mm		
			^	
		Nosing depth	20 mm	
		Tread thickness	40 mm	
	Riser board	Riser board material	Wood66	
		Riser board thickness	20 mm	
		Angle of riser board from the vertical	0°	
	Support	Support material	Wood66	
	Same on both sides			
	Left support type None			
	Left support width 40 mm			
	Height from tread top 40 mm			
		Vertical cut off at start from tread top	110 mm	
		Vertical cut off at end from tread top	40 mm	
		Overhang horizontal at start from tread	40 mm	
		Overhang horizontal at end from tread	40 mm	
		Right support type	Sharp ~	
		Right support width	None	
		Height from tread top	Parallel	
		Vertical cut off at start from tread top	Sharp	
	Vertical cut off at end from tread top 40 mm			
	Overhang horizontal at start from tread 40 mm			
		Overhang horizontal at end from tread	40 mm 🗸	
BIM Parameters	Normál lépcső	ю Q		OK Cancel



We still need to create the column in the middle, and ceiling cut, and railing.

7.3.2. Placing handrail

• Now go back to the stair properties and select General properties. We set the style on the right side to Steel profile.

🔳 Stair				×
Stair Calculator			······	
General properties	© General			
	Layer	Line	<u> </u>	
Support	Colour			
Step cometry	Line type	Simple Line		
Step geometry	Line weights	0 mm		
Representation on the floor above	Draw Order	8- Bottom-most		
	×) Railing			
	Railing automatically added to left side			
	Regenerate	A		
	Railing Dailing automatically added to right side	Ad yie raining		
	Railing automatically added to right side	<u> </u>		
	Regenerate	Etaal profile		
	Raining	Steel profile	<u> </u>	
	Necinal	Along the stair		
	Nosing.	Szagatott1		
	Section line	Dotted above the section line	~	
	Partial line-tine	Szagatott	~	
	Cutting elevation	1000 mm		
	Cutting line direction	20 °		
	Parallel distance	100 mm		
	Draw walking line			
	Walking line arrow	± 4	~	
	Cut out landings on walking line			
	Walking line before landing			
	Text on walking line			
	Numbering (50% of current font size)			
	Walking line backward			
	Arrow fit the box			
	Show geometry text			~
				,
BIM Parameters	Normál lépcső	D QI		OK Cancel

- The railing is created but still not perfect. To modify further open its properties.
- First click on Primary Balustrade tab (1) and activate Clear spacing between items to 120 mm (2).
- Activate Adjust bottom of balustrades to stair (3), also select perpendicular ending condition on the bottom (4).
- Close the dialog by clicking on OK. (5)



Railing			-	×
	Increase or decrease the height o	Full regeneration usin distribution on all part f all balusters: Regeneration by parts	g same :s	Edit path segments
	Distribution of primary balusters betw Profile O Object Width 0.02 m	 Ween balusters by big steps. May insert panel Uniform step Fix step Fix step, centered Maximum step value 	els and bars here S >= S'	Automatic refresh on page
General settings		Minimum step value X S*	S' Y	
Handrail		Optimal step (nearest to given value) Distance of the first element (X)	0.1 m	
Balusters		The distance of the last element (Y)	0.1 m	
	Profile from Library	Center to center spacing (S)	0.14 m	
Intermediate balusters	Steel	Clear spacing between balusters (D) 2	0.12 m	
Panels and bars	Copy to baluster clipboard	Offset from path(>0:right)	0 m	
	Paste from baluster clipboard	Base offset from the path (<0:down)	0 m	
Newel posts at the turn	Aligning the bottom of balusters to staircase	Baluster height Beam end	1 m	
Balusters by big steps	Adjust balusters to a top profile	Top (other) ending		
BIM Parameters	Top profile	Bottom (start) ending 4		
Acélpálcás - karfával				OK 5 Cancel

7.3.3. Placing column

Now place a column in the middle of the spiral stair.

- On the floor plan go to the ground floor, make visible the first floor by clicking on the light bulb icon with the left mouse button.
- Go to Ribbon menu / Building and select Column.
- Place it into the middle of the circle and check its properties.





- Specify the value of the section profile. Change the column section profile. Click on Profile from library and select Circle and set the Radius to 200 mm and the Shell thickness to zero.
- Click on OK to accept changes.

Edit profile	X
	Circle Mirror on X Mirror on Y
Select Drofile Dertraw	Rotate Uniform 3D scaling operation Width: Height: 200 mm 200 mm
Name Value Diameter [1 - 100000 mm] 200 Shell thickness [0 - 100000 mm] 0	
	OK Cancel

- Turn off the Hatching.
- Its' material is "Steel", before closing the dialog window, we still have to modify the height of the column. In order to calculate the correct height use "Edit Level" tool. Open Edit level dialog window, here you can see that the total height from ground floor up to 2nd level is 6,000 mm. In addition, if the stair ends on the first floor, the handrail is needed here, therefore we have to add 1 000 mm. To be on the safe side, we use slightly higher value 7100 mm.
- Close the dialog by clicking on OK.

					4
		Visualization			
		Colour			
/		Layer	31_Oszlop1	~	ŝ.
		Line weights	0 mm	~	ł
		Line type	Simple Line	~	ŕ
/		Draw Order	8 - Bottom-most	~	Î
/		On which floors visible? (Excep	ot for its own floor)		×.
		All floors	Edit		Í
		Hatch	Hatch 38		
		Same materials	À		•
\		Solid material	Steel		1
\backslash		Surface material	Steel		i
	/	Constrains	λ		
		Base offset from the floor	0 mm	~	Ĩ
		Height	7100	~	1
		Angle of inclination	90°		1
		Direction of inclination	0°		
		Insert into wall			
rofile	Circle	Make only hole in the wa	al		
	Profile from Library	Make only hole in the slab			
	i nome nom elbrary	Slab-roof cutting			"
	Edit profile	Structural properties	Column	~	Ĩ
Vidth:	Height:	🎗 Other			
200 mm	200 mm	Cutou	ut - Recess - Attachment		
		2D not visible			
		Show 3D			1

7.3.4. Cutting the slab

Finally, we cut the slab above the stair.

- Go to the first level.
- Click on the stair and select from the local menu "Cut slabs above stair" command.



230



• Now the cutting is done. Go to the next level, here you can see the result.



7.3.5. Handrails along the slab cutting

We can create handrail in ARCHLine.XP individually, not just only by placing them on the edges of steps. Now we create handrails following the line of the slab cutting.

- Activate the floor plan window, now the second floor is active. Turn off the visibility of the ground level and turn on the visibility of level 1 to display the stairs.
- First go to Ribbon menu / Building / Railing /Railing and choose "Steel profile" from the side menu.



- Draw the railing by using polylines.
- After placing the first two points (1,2) choose from the top right menu Arc option (3). Place the third point too (4), and pull the arc to the proper place.





- When you finished the drawing, close the command by hitting Enter twice.
- This handrail is still not perfect we have to set those properties we have done before.
- First click on Primary Balustrade tab (1)
- Activate Clear spacing between items to 120 mm (2).
- Activate Adjust bottom of balustrades to stair and Adjust balustrades to a top profile (3).
- Select perpendicular Ending condition on top and bottom (4).
- Furthermore, we also have to adjust the Offset from path to 30 mm (5), also change this value to the 30 mm under Handrails tab (6).
- Close the dialog by clicking on OK.





If like to apply the same material on the gallery and stairs too, change it under the Stairs properties to "Natural pine".

7.4. Handrail on gallery

Let's create a separate railing on the gallery.

- The floor plan window is active. Go to level 1.
- Go to Ribbon menu / Building / Railing, now draw a line following the outer side of the gallery.



• When you finished press Entre twice.





• The railing is finished.

7.4.1. Modify the style of the handrail

- Modify the style of the handrail.
- Select the ready railing and open its' properties
- Click on the name of style Steel profile in the appearing dialog window below, this opens the library.

Railing		x
	Increase or decrease the height of all balusters: Image: Full regeneration using same distribution on all parts 0 m Image: Regeneration by parts	Edit path segments
		Automatic refresh on page
	🚍 Railing V R 8 - Bottom-most V	
	EVE Simple Line	
	Representation by centerline	
	Dimension path on layout	
General settings	Elevation of handrail reference point from the floor or 0 m	
Balusters		
Primary balusters		
Intermediate balusters		
Panels and bars		
Newel posts at the turn		
Balusters by big steps		
Handrail		
	Steel profile BIM Parameters	OK Cancel

• Now select GALLERY_RAILING style, and click on the Activate button.



- Close the dialog by pressing OK, now the railing is modified.
- Repeat these changes on the gallery on the second floor. In Edit level dialog window copy the previously created railing.





Draw the railing to the staircase (1.2.3), by using GALLERY style. Choose Ribbon menu / Building / Railing command, and select the style from the side menu..



7.5. Customized handrail

Now we will create a new handrail style which will be used on the gallery. This way you can learn the basic steps of creating customized handrails.

• First, go to **Ribbon menu / Building / Properties** and click on **Railing**. In the appearing dialog window select handrail styles. For that click on the name of the previously used handrail style, now the list of the styles will pop up on the right side. Double click on the Steel profile, now it is activated and it will serve as the base of the new handrail style.

Railing	Increase or decrease the height of all balusters: O mm Railing Railing Representation by centerine Dimension path on layout Elevation of handrail reference point from the floor or from the selected stair Distribution of balusters by stair steps Distribution of balusters by stair steps Overhang at start: O mm Eliminate gaps on handrail less than: O mm	Automatic refresh on page	Styles Classical balusters Column with sphere 2 Glass railing with rods 1 Metal railing with rods 2 - left Metal railing with rods 2 - right Metal railing with rods 2 - right Metal railing with glass Stee profile Wooden pale
Newel posts at the turn Balusters by big steps			New
⊡ Handrail			Activate Modify
	Steal profile BTM Darametere	OK Cancel	Rename Delete

- Now click on the Primary balusters option (1) and set the followings.
- Set the distance from the first and last baluster to zero. (2).
- Set "Center to center spacing" 1200 mm (3).
- Now select the rectangle column profile from "Profile from Library", then change the values of height to 50 mm and width to 20 mm.

Railing					×
General settings	Increase or decrease the height of O mm Distribution of primary balusters bet O Profile O Dject Width 20 mm	f all balusters: tween balusters by big steps. May insert pane © Uniform step O Fix step, O Fix step, centered © Maximum step value O Minimum step value O Optimal step (nearest to given value) First baluster distance from post (X)	Is and bars here S >= S* S* S* I;Y 0 mm	Automatic refresh on page	0
Primary balusters	4 Profile from Library	Center to center spacing (S)	0 mm		
Intermediate balusters	Steel	Clear spacing between items (D)	1180 mm		
Panels and bars	Copy to baluster clipboard	Offset from path(>0:right)	0 mm		•
Newel posts at the turn	Paste from baluster clipboard	Base offset from the path (<0:down)	0 mm		
	Adjust bottom of balustrades to stair	Baluster height Ending condition	1000 mm		
Balusters by big steps	Adjust balusters to a top profile	Тор			
☑ Handrail	Top profile	Bottom			
	Steel profile B	BIM Parameters		ОК	Cancel

- Activate "Newel posts at the turn" and then click on it (1).
- Change the profile to rectangle like the previous way (2), then set the material to "Steel" (3).
- Change the value of the first and the last balusters to -10 mm (4).
- The Offset from path is 10 mm (5).
- The base offset from the path is 100 mm (6).

Railing					×
2	Increase or decrease the height of 0 mm	all balusters:			
8	Balusters on nodes of path segments	S		Automatic refresh on page	•
	Profile Object Width 20 mm	O Empty space			
General settings	4	First baluster distance from the beginning	-10 mm		
Primary balusters	2 Profile from Library	Last baluster distance from the end of path	-10 mm		
Intermediate balusters	Steel 3			' '	
Panels and bars	Copy to baluster clipboard	Offset from path(>0:right)	0 mm		
	Paste from baluster clipboard	Base offset from the path (<0:down) 5	10 mm		
Newel posts at the turn	Adjust bottom of balustrades to	Baluster height 6	1000 mm		
Balusters by big steps	L' stair	Ending condition Top Bottom			
	Steel profile BI	M Parameters		ОК	Cancel

 Now click on Handrail tab (1). There is only one handrail and its profile are circle by default. Add another one by clicking on "Insert new" button, then modify the diameter to 20 mm by clicking on the circle profile. Close the dialog by pressing "OK" and change the material to steel.



Add/remove handrail

Add/remove handrail							×
	Omm	he height of all balu	sters:				
	Index Profile 1 Circle 2 3 Circle	Shift vertical 1000 mm 1000 mm	Overhang at st 0 mm 0 mm	Overhang at end: 0 mm 0 mm	P	Automatic refresh on page	0
General settings Balusters ✓ Primary balusters	Move up Move down	2 Inser	t new Plane or perpentente vertica	of profile I dicular to path or (
Intermediate balusters Panels and bars	Offset from path(>0:rig Material	ght) 0 mm Ste	e 1 4				I
Newel posts at the turn	Elevate by general Excha Bottom (start) ending	increasing/decreasin nge endings Vertical	ending)		
Balusters by big steps	Top (other) ending	Vertical	ending				
	Steel profile	BIM Para	meters			OK	Cancel

- Click on "Insert new" add three more, this way you will add three handrails with the previous settings. ٠
- Now modify Shift vertical values as per followings: ٠
- 2nd handrail shift value: 800 mm. *****
- 3rd handrail shift value 600 mm. \Leftrightarrow
- * 4th handrail shift value 400 mm.
- $\dot{\mathbf{v}}$ 5th handrail shift value 200 mm.
- Finally modify the profile of the first handrail to rectangle. Change the ٠ height to 20 mm and width to 50 mm (2), move the reference point to the center with a single click (3).

Index	Profile	Shift vertical	Overhang at st	Overhang at end:	т
1	Circle	1000 mm	0 mm	0 mm	P
2	Circle	800 mm	0 mm	0 mm	P
3	Circle	600 mm	0 mm	0 mm	P
4	Circle	400 mm	0 mm	0 mm	P
5	Circle	200 mm	0 mm	0 mm	\sim

	Destands of			
<mark></mark> 1	Rectangle Sim	ble		
3		Mirr	or on X	
<u></u>		Mirr	or on Y	
2		P	otate	
			Juic	
-10	Uniform 3D s	caling operation		
1	└── Width: 0.05 m	H	eight: 0.02 m]
Select Profile Redraw				1
Value				
Height [0.001 - 100 m] 0.02 2 Nidth [0.001 - 100 m] 0.05 2				
	OK		Cancel	
e handrail is finished and save it as a new	w style. Bring up the s	tyle library ar	nd Styles	
e handrail is finished and save it as a new ck on "New" and give a name to the new	w style. Bring up the s style. Click on "Activa	tyle library ar te", the close	nd Styles the	ashietara
e handrail is finished and save it as a new ck on "New" and give a name to the new ndow by pressing "OK".	w style. Bring up the s style. Click on "Activa	tyle library ar te", the close	nd Styles the Classical I	palusters ith sphere
e handrail is finished and save it as a new ck on "New" and give a name to the new ndow by pressing "OK".	w style. Bring up the s style. Click on "Activa	tyle library ar te", the close	nd Styles the Classical I Column w Column w Column w	oalusters ith sphere ith sphere 2 RAILING
e handrail is finished and save it as a new ck on "New" and give a name to the new ndow by pressing "OK". yles	w style. Bring up the s style. Click on "Activa	tyle library ar te", the close	nd Styles the Classical I Column w Gass raili Metal raili	palusters ith sphere 2 RAILING ng with frame ng with rods 1
e handrail is finished and save it as a ner ck on "New" and give a name to the new ndow by pressing "OK". yles lew name of style Classical balusters	w style. Bring up the s style. Click on "Activa	tyle library ar te", the close	nd Styles the Classical I Column w Column w GALLERY Metal rail	palusters ith sphere ith sphere 2 RAILING ng with frame ng with rods 1 ng with rods 2 - left ng with rods 2 - right
e handrail is finished and save it as a ner ck on "New" and give a name to the new ndow by pressing "OK". yles vew name of style classical balusters older	w style. Bring up the s style. Click on "Activa	tyle library ar te", the close	nd Styles the Classical I Column w Gass raili Metal raili Metal raili Metal raili	palusters ith sphere 2 RAILING ng with frame ng with rods 1 ng with rods 2 - left ng with rods 2 - right ngs with glass
e handrail is finished and save it as a ner ck on "New" and give a name to the new ndow by pressing "OK". yles lew name of style <u>Classical balusters</u> iolder	w style. Bring up the s style. Click on "Activa	tyle library ar te", the close	nd Styles the Classical I Column w Column w GALLERY Metal raili Metal raili Metal raili Steel prof Wooden 1	palusters ith sphere ith sphere 2 RAILING ng with frame ng with rods 1 ng with rods 2 - left ng with rods 2 - left ng with rods 2 - right ngs with glass file pale
e handrail is finished and save it as a ner ck on "New" and give a name to the new ndow by pressing "OK". yles vew name of style classical balusters older	w style. Bring up the s style. Click on "Activa	tyle library ar te", the close	nd Styles the Classical I Column w Column w Gass raili Metal raili Metal raili Metal raili Metal raili Metal raili Metal raili Metal raili	palusters ith sphere 2 RAILING ng with frame ng with rods 1 ng with rods 2 - left ng with rods 2 - right ngs with glass file pale
e handrail is finished and save it as a ner ck on "New" and give a name to the new ndow by pressing "OK". yles vew name of style <u>Classical balusters</u> older	w style. Bring up the s style. Click on "Activa	tyle library ar te", the close	nd Styles the Classical I Column w Column w GALLERY Metal rail Metal rail Metal rail	palusters ith sphere ith sphere 2 RAILING ng with frame ng with rods 1 ng with rods 2 - left ng with rods 2 - right ngs with glass file pale
e handrail is finished and save it as a ner ck on "New" and give a name to the new ndow by pressing "OK". yles vew name of style <u>classical balusters</u> folder older older and subfolder specification is not mandatory. f you specify these, the given style name will automatically	w style. Bring up the s style. Click on "Activa () () () () () () () () () () () () ()	tyle library ar te", the close	nd Styles the Classical I Column w Column w Column w GalLERY Metal rail Metal rail Metal rail Wetal rail Wetal rail	palusters ith sphere 2 RAILING ng with frame ng with rods 1 ng with rods 2 - left ng with rods 2 - right ngs with glass file pale
e handrail is finished and save it as a ner ck on "New" and give a name to the new ndow by pressing "OK". yles vew name of style classical balusters older older older older and subfolder specification is not mandatory. f you specify these, the given style name will automatically	w style. Bring up the s style. Click on "Activa 	tyle library ar te", the close	nd Styles the Classical I Column w Column w Gass raili Metal raili Metal raili Metal raili Wetal raili Wetal raili	palusters ith sphere 2 RAILING ng with frame ng with rods 1 ng with rods 2 - left ng with rods 2 - right ngs with glass file pale
e handrail is finished and save it as a ner ck on "New" and give a name to the new ndow by pressing "OK". yles vew name of style <u>classical balusters</u> Folder Subfolder Folder and subfolder specification is not mandatory. f you specify these, the given style name will automatically	w style. Bring up the s style. Click on "Activa 	tyle library ar te", the close	nd Styles the Classical I Column w Column w GalLERY Metal rail Metal rail Wetal rail	palusters ith sphere ith sphere 2 RAILING ng with frame ng with rods 1 ng with rods 2 - left ng with rods 2 - right ngs with glass file pale
e handrail is finished and save it as a ner ck on "New" and give a name to the new ndow by pressing "OK". yles vew name of style classical balusters older older older older and subfolder specification is not mandatory. f you specify these, the given style name will automatically	w style. Bring up the s style. Click on "Activa () () () () () () () () () () () () ()	tyle library ar te", the close	nd Styles the Classical I Column w Column w Gass raili Metal raili Metal raili Metal raili Wetal raili Wetal raili Wooden p	palusters ith sphere 2 RAILING ng with frame ng with rods 1 ng with rods 2 - left ng with rods 2 - right ngs with glass file bale

Check the result. Place the handrail by using Ribbon menu / Building / Railing / Railing. Later this style can be used any time.

7.6. Customized stairs

7.6.1. Specifying a stair by treads

We will create customized stairs which is leading from the ground floor to the first-floor gallery.

Activate the floor plan window. Go to the Ground floor. On the area marked by blue we will place stairs. Now you have to draw it step by step, then the program will automatically put together the model of the stairs.



Modify

New

Activate

• Go to Ribbon menu / Building and choose Stair by treads commands.



- From the appearing floating menu Choose "Internal point of chain" tool. As you can see the cursor shape has changed, move it over the lowest stair, and click on every step one by one, preferably in one line.
- After the first click, the program will ask for the height of steps. This should be 150 mm and if it is necessary, we can modify it later.



• When finished, close the command with double Enter.

✓ Stair by treads
Rectangle
Polygon
Previous reference point
Internal point of chain
Chain one by one
Close



If you switch to 3D view, you can see that the top of the stair does not reach the correct height. We want that the top step to be at the same height as the first-floor level. Please do the followings:

- Click on the stair and look at the properties.
- The User defined stairs dialog window appears. Here we can find the general properties, now let's go to Step Geometry tab. (1). In the preview window you can see all steps were created individually. At the bottom of the window, you can set the New height of stair, now change it to 3,000 mm (2). Click on Apply (3), then the program will automatically re calculate the rise of stairs.
- Click on OK to close the window

User defined stairs					×
Stair Calculator					
General properties	Step Nr.	Rise (including tread)	Tread thickness		
	1	16.666667 cm	4 cm	The step is a landing	
Support	2	16.666667 cm	4 cm	The step is a landing	
Sten geometry	3	16.666667 cm	4 cm	The step is a landing	
Step geometry	4	16.666667 cm	4 cm	The step is a landing	
Representation on the floor above	5	16.666667 cm	4 cm	The step is a landing	
	6	16.666667 cm	4 cm	The step is a landing	
	7	16.666667 cm	4 cm	The step is a landing	
	8	16.666667 cm	4 cm	The step is a landing	
	9	16.666667 cm	4 cm	The step is a landing	
	10	16.666667 cm	4 cm	The step is a landing	
	11	16.666667 cm	4 cm	The step is a landing	
	12	16.666667 cm	4 cm	The step is a landing	
	13	16.666667 cm	4 cm	The step is a landing	
	14	16.666667 cm	4 cm	The step is a landing	
	15	16.666667 cm	4 cm	The step is a landing	
	16	16.666667 cm	4 cm	The step is a landing	
	17	16.666667 cm	4 cm	The step is a landing	
	18	16.666667 cm	4 cm	✓ The step is a landing	
	The height of s	tair			
	inc neight of t				
		2 New h	eight of stair: 3 m	3 Apply	
BIM Parameters	Nor	mál léncső		_	4 OK Cancel
		,			•

7.6.2. Editing the staircase

In the following example, we will show how to modify a staircase. First, we will curve the right side, then undo this action, insert a new node, and move an existing node. Finally, we will undo the edits.

- Click on the right side of the customized stair.
- From the local menu, select Edit Turn into curved edge



• Specify the curve.



- Use the Undo command to revert the edit.
- Insert a new node on the right side of the stair: From the local menu, select Edit – Insert node.
- Then move the lower right node.



Use the Undo command to go back two steps to restore the original state.

7.6.3. Handrail on the side of the stairs

Now create the same handrail to this stair which can be found on the gallery. First modify the handrail of the gallery complying with step up.

- Activate the floor plan window. Move to the first floor.
- Make visible the ground floor.

💡 Level 3	
💡 Level 2	
🗸 Level 1	
Ground	
<	>
♣ ² ₁ Floor: Level 1	~

- Select railing, by using "Move node" command place the railing line to the right place.
- Close the command.

Now simply place handrail on the stairs:

• Go to the properties of the staircase, select the General properties tab, then activate the Railing on the right and select the custom railing style, the classical balusters.



Stair Calculator			^	
Stall Calculator				
General properties		line		
	Colour			
Support	Line type	Simple Line		
Step geometry	Line weights	0 mm	~	
	Draw Order	8- Bottom-most	~	
resentation on the floor above	Railing			
	Railing automatically added to left side			
	Regenerate			
	Railing	Acélpálcás - karfával	~	
	Railing automatically added to right side			
	Regenerate			
	Railing	Classical balusters	\sim	
	Representation in 2D	- Acélpálcás - karfával		
	Nosing:	Akril korlát		
	Nosing line-type	- Akril korlat		
	Section line	- Column with sphere		
	Partial line-type	- Column with sphere 2		
	Cutting elevation	Egyedi_korlat		
	Cutting line direction	- Glass railing with frame		
	Parallel distance	– Metal railing with rods 1		
	Draw walking line	Metal railing with rods 2 - left		
	Walking line arrow	Metal railing with roos 2 - right		
	Cut out landings on walking line	- Metal railings with glass - right		
	Walking line before landing	Stainless Steel Tube - left		
	Text on walking line	Steel profile - loft		
	Numbering (50% of current font size)	Steel profile - right		
	Walking line backward	- Total glass - left		
	Arrow fit the box	Total glass - right		
	Show geometry text	wooden pale	\sim	

- Open railing properties. Click on "Primary balusters", and active "Adjust bottom of balusters to stair" option. Then select perpendicular "Ending condition".
- Activate "Newel posts at turn" and activate "Adjust bottom of balusters to stair" option.
- Close the window by pressing OK.

Railing					x
	Increase or decrease the height of	all balusters: Full regeneration usin distribution on all part	g same s	Edit path segments	
	Distribution of primary balusters betw Profile Object	veen balusters by big steps. May insert pane	els and bars here	Automatic refresh on page	0
	Width 0.02 m	Uniform step Fix step Fix step, centered Maximum step value Minimum step value X : 5*	S >= S*		
General settings		 Optimal step (nearest to given value) First baluster distance from post (X) 	0 m		
Balusters		Last baluster distance from post (Y)	0 m		
Primary balusters	Profile from Library	Center to center spacing (S)	1.2 m		
Intermediate balusters	Steel	Clear spacing between items (D)	1.18 m		3/I/X
Panels and bars	Copy to baluster clipboard	Offset from path(>0:right)	0 m		
	Paste from baluster dipboard	Base offset from the path (<0:down)	0 m		
✓ Newel posts at the turn	Adjust bottom of balustrades to stair	Baluster height Ending condition	0.98 m		
Balusters by big steps	Adjust balusters to a top profile	Тор			
Handrail	Top profile	Bottom			
	Egyedi korlát BI	M Parameters		ОК	Cancel

• Finally select the handrail on the floor plan, use Offset to pull it closer to stairs by 50 mm.



7.6.4. Place wall along the stairs

Now we will place a wall under the customized stairs, this area now can be built-in.

Please do the followings:

- The floor plan window is active. Go to Ground floor, where the customized stairs can be found.
- Go to Ribbon bar / Building / Properties / Wall.

File		 1	$\square \cap \cap$	10	🗂 🍼	8 🗙 🖛	# 7	Ā +?	Edit	Vie	ew Bui	lding
Properties	Wall		Connection	Door	Window	Curtain wall	Column	CD Beam	Slab	Roof	Ceiling	۲ Railir
Wall				Openi	ng			Structure			
Doo!	r			Q,]							

- Change the Unconnected height of the wall to 3000 mm, the Total thickness to 100 mm and change the Finish face to "Corpus white".
- Set the line type to Dashed and select No hatch in the Edit Compound Walls menu.

Wall		×
Redraw		
	Visualization	
Transaction and the second	Colour	
	Line weights	0.3 mm
	Line type	Szaggatott ~
	Layer	11_Fal1
	Priority	8- Bottom-most
	Constrains	
	Unconnected Height	3000 mm 🗸
	Base offset from the floor	0 mm 🗸
	Total thickness	100 mm
	Inclined wall section height from	1000 mm
	Slant angle	90°
	Structural wall	Non-bearing wall
	U-value	1.37 W/(m2*K)
	Visibility	
	✓ Same materials	
	Finish Face: Interior	Corpus_white
	Finish Face: Exterior	Corpus_white
	Location line	Finish Face: Exterior
	Wall status	Disallow wall joins
	Skip this wall over room bounding	9
	Display tiling on the interior si	×
	Display tiling on the exterior s	×
	Tiling representation on 2D	Off ~
	Visibility of sides	
General properties	The reference line is invisible	
Edit Compound Walls	The other side is invisible	
Wall Framing		
Further settings		
BIM Parameters 1 rétegű 38-as fal		OK Cancel



Edit Com	pound Walls												
Total thick U-value:	tness 5.20 W/(m2*K)		100 mm	Finish Face: Ex	xterior								
Layer I<	Function 1 - Very low	~	Material	Thickness 100 mm	Base offset	· · ·	Height 3000 mm	\~ [Fill pattern Ston Edit Copy from hai Copy from hai No hatch	Name	Layer endi Prev	Visible in 3D	

• Draw a wall along the outer line of the customized stairs. The wall reference line is this outer line. You can change this in the appearing right floating menu or using Space key. Click on right side option.

The wall under the stairs is finished, but the stairs do not cut the wall.

• Select the staircase and enter its properties. On the Support tab, set the Cut the walls option to All floors and close the window by clicking OK.

This completes the wall under the stairs. Rebuild the model so that the change appears in the 3D view.

User defined stairs				×
Stair Calculator	Current			
Stan Calculator	Support			
General properties	Connection to the upper slab			
Support	A: 0.1 m B: 0.1 m	C: 0.3 m	Ľ,	
Step geometry	Connection to the bottom slab			
Representation on the floor above	A: 0.1 m B: 0.1 m D: 0.	15 m E: 0.2 m C: 0.3 m		
	Base Elevation		0 m	
	Cut the walls		All floors	
	Waist slab material		Own floor	
	Construct the landing like a slab		All floors	
	✓ Waist slab	Thickness	On own floor and below	
	Chair shringer	Thickness of landings	0.270 111	
		Material	Beech	
		Nosing depth	0.02 m	
		Tread thickness	0.04 m	
	Riser board	Riser board material	Wood66	
		Riser board thickness	0.02 m	
		Angle of riser board from the vertical	0°	
	Support	Support material	Wood66	
		Left support type	None	
		0.04 m		
		0.04 m	-	
		Vertical cut off at start from tread top	0.11 m	
		Vertical cut off at end from tread top	0.04 m 🗸	
BIM Parameters	Normál lépcső]		OK Cancel



7.7. Floating stair with steel support

In the program, it is possible to create different stair types. We will now see an example of these. Let's suppose there is a cloakroom at the entrance in place of the present U-shaped staircase, and a steel-structured staircase leads upstairs along the wall.

7.7.1. New stair

- In the Layer manager place the already existing stair to a new layer.
- Open the Layer manager dialog and create a new layer. Name them "Stair01" and "Stair02"."

Layer Properties Management										×
🐟 🐟 The name of cur	rent la	yer: 41_	_Stair 1							Show visible layers only
Name	On	Lock	Pr	Elem	C	Line-type	Line-w	Description	^	Filters
00_Layer 0	` 😲 👘	<u> </u>	4	156		Simple Line	0 mm			
01_Other1	8	8	ā	0		Simple Line	0 mm			⊡- All layers
♦ 02	9	8	7	0		Simple Line	0 mm			····· Used layers
02_Other2	8	8	9	0		Simple Line	0 mm			
03_Other3	8	8	9	0		Simple Line	0 mm			
04_Other4	8	<u> </u>	9	0		Simple Line	0 mm			
05_Other 5	8	<u> </u>	6	0		Simple Line	0 mm			
06_Other6		8	9	0		Simple Line	0 mm			
07_Other7	9	<u> </u>	e	0		Simple Line	0 mm			
08_Background	9	<u> </u>	e	0		Simple Line	0 mm			
09_Room stamp	9	<u> </u>	e	0		Simple Line	0 mm			
🧼 10_Area	9	<u> </u>	e	0		Simple Line	0 mm			Layer filter restricts the layers displayed in the
🧼 11_Wall1	?	Ē	4	362		Simple Line	0 mm			Layer list to the selected layers. Drag and drop
12_Wall2	9	<u> </u>	4	0		Simple Line	0 mm			the selected layers onto the layer litter
15_Wall5	9	<u> </u>	4	0		Simple Line	0 mm			Variations
16_Wall6	9	<u> </u>	e	0		Simple Line	0 mm			
🧼 17_Wall7	9	<u> </u>	e	0		Simple Line	0 mm			
18_Wall8	8	8	9	0		Simple Line	0 mm			Available variations
19_Wall9	8	<u> </u>	9	0		Simple Line	0 mm			···· All layers
20_Wall 10	8	<u> </u>	6	0		Simple Line	0 mm			
21_Slab1	?	Ē	6	45		Simple Line	0 mm			
22_Slab2		<u> </u>	9	0		Simple Line	0 mm			
23_Slab3		<u> </u>	9	0		Simple Line	0 mm			
24_Slab4	9	<u> </u>	9	0		Simple Line	0 mm			
25_Slab5	9	<u> </u>	4	0		Simple Line	0 mm			
26_Slab6	9	a	4	0		Simple Line 💌	0 mm 💌	1		
27_Slab7	8	<u> </u>	4	0		Simple Line	0 mm			
28_Slab8	9	<u> </u>	4	0		Simple Line	0 mm			A layer variation saves all the layers with the
29_Slab9	9	<u> </u>	e	0		Simple Line	0 mm		\mathbf{v}	current states. It helps switching between
<			_					>		possible rayer variations in one step.
Do not delete used layers		\sim	Copy t	o clipboar	d 🗌	Protocol for La	ayer Naming			OK Cancel
	_									





Place the U stair and its railing to the layer "Stair01". Place the previously created 1st gallery railing to this layer as well.



Turn off this layer by activating the Layer walk dialog and CTRL + click on the "Stair01" layer.



Select the Ribbon Bar / Building / Stair / Straight run type, the click on the Reference option on the Status bar below.



• Select the outer wall corner of the cloak room as reference and drag the cursor down 4500 mm. Select the inner corner point of the cloak room as the endpoint of the stair.

٠

•



• Modify the properties of the stair: set the height to 300 cm, change the number of steps (n) to 17, and set the width to 130 cm.

II Stair			X
Stair Calculator General properties Support Step geometry Representation on the floor above	Step properties $f_{\mu}r^{\mu}r^{\mu}$ H = 300 cm • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	Regenerate Take the floor height Min Max 60 cm 64 cm 26 cm 37 cm 14 cm 19 cm	
	Step geometry Image: state stat	Rise/Tread 21/32	
BIM Parameters	Normál lépcső	0	OK Cancel

The following stair will appear in the 3D window:





7.7.2. Selecting the stair support

Many different stairs support can be created. These can be accessed from the **Ribbon bar / Building / Stair / Convert to floating staircase**. The stair supports listed here are integrated into the program and you can activate them with just one click on the stair.



• Select the Middle stringer stair support – Basic style, the click on the stair boundary on the floor plan.

Left stringer stair support - Cantilever
🚰 Left stringer stair support - Simple
──Left stringer stair support - Simple L
Middle stringer stair support - Basic
Middle stringer stair support - Simple L
Middle stringer stair support - Simple T
⊠Right stringer stair support - Simple
🔀 Right stringer stair support - Simple L



• Let's try another stair support style: select the *Left stringer stair support* – *Simple L* and click on the left side of the stair on the floor plan. Then select the *Right stringer stair support* – *Simple L* and click on the right side of the stair.



• Finally select the *Right stringer stair support – Cantilever* from the list. Click on the right side of the stair, then hit Enter. Delete the remaining left stair support from the drawing.



Editing the stair support

Upon entering the properties of the stair support, the editable parameters of the stringer beam and the tread support appear. With these options the whole stair support can be customized.



Stair stringer							×
	Select an object that include: wedges from library to suppo On the Stringer Beam tab, se will follow the staircase layou	s tread plate and plate r ort tread cover. elect a profile (railing) th it.	iser 🖂 Full reg distribu at	generation using same ution on all parts	e		
	Index Profile	Shift vertical Ov	erhang at st	Overhang at end:	T	Automatic refresh on page	€
	1 Rectangle	-100 mm 0 m	im	0 mm	\sim		
General settings General settings Stringer beam Tread support			Plane o perper vertica	of profile dicular to path or (R U	THUMMIN	
	Shift vertical along landing	ns 0 mm					
	Offset from path(>0:right	t) 0 mm					
	Material	Steel					
	Exchang	je endings					
	Bottom (start) ending	Horizontal end	ng				
BIM Parameters	Top (other) ending	Vertical endin	9				
ldali lépcsőtámasz - konzol						ОК	Cancel

7.7.3. Creating a glass railing

• To create the railing of the stair, select the Ribbon Bar / Building / Railing option and click with right mouse button, and select the Properties option.

Building	Inte	Interior Dr		Interior Dra		Dimension	Documentation	
	ۍ ^ر	D	ΠΠ					
Ceiling	Stair	Ramp	Railing	Room and area	a Surveyed rc			
		Stair		Property				
100	-	1:50	3	Styles				

• In the appearing dialog click on the name of the railing, then click on the Steel profile style on the right.

Railing			Styles ×
Reling	Increase or decrease the height of all balusters: Omm Overhang at start: Omm	Automatic refresh on page Automatic refresh on page	Styles Acrylic railing Acrylic railing Cassical babuters Column with sphere 2 Calumn with sphere 2 Callery railing Metal railing with rods 2 - left Metal railing with loss - left Statel rolle - left Statel profile - left Steel profile - left Total glass - left Wooden pale
Newel posts at the turn	Overhang at end: 0 mm		
Balusters by big steps BIM Parameters			New Molify
Steel profile		OK Cancel	Rename Delete

There are many ways to create a railing. We will now see an easy example.

• Turn off the *Primary balusters* and on the Handrail tab add another handrail element with the Insert new button. We will convert this to a glass plate. Click on the profile in the new row.
Add/remove handrail		×
	Increase or decrease the height of all balusters: 0 mm Index Profile Shift vertical 0 mm 0 mm 1 Circle 1000 mm 2 Circle 1000 mm 4 0 mm 0 mm	0
General settings		
☑ Handrail	2 3	
Balusters	Move up Insert new Plane of profile personality is not been a set of the personality of t	
Primary balusters	Move down Delete vertical O	
Intermediate balusters		
Panels and bars	Offset from path(>0:right) 0 mm	
Newel posts at the turn	Material Mat	
Balusters by big steps	Exchange endings Bottom (start) ending Vertical ending	
BIM Parameters	Top (other) ending Vertical ending	
Steel profile		Cancel

• In the appearing dialog click on the Select profile button and select the Rectangle profile from the library, then hit OK.



• Turn off the Uniform 3D scaling operation option, and set the profile width to 6 mm and its height to 1200 mm, then hit OK.





Set the vertical shift of the profile to -200 mm, then modify its material to "Glass26".



- Select the handrail in the first row with the circle cross-section (1) and set its Offset from path to 50 mm. (2)
- Open the library by clicking on the button in the lower left corner, (3) then click on the New button (4) and name the railing as "Acrylic railing". (5,6)

.

255

ARCH INE. 🕏

Add/remove handrail		a. Styles
	Full regeneration using same distribution on all parts Increase or decrease the height of all balusters: Regeneration by parts O m In Profile Shift vertical Overhang at Overhang at Type of path	Edit path segments Edit path segments Avril, koriàt Avril, koriàt Classical balaters Column with sphere Column with sphere Column with sphere Egyed_koriat
General settings	Z Rectangular 0 m 0 m Path of railing	Styles × New name of style Acrylic railing 5 Folder
✓ Handrail	Move up Insert new Plane of profile	Subfolder
Balusters Primary balusters	Move down Delete vertical to put of	Folder and subfolder specification is not mandatory. If you specify these, the given style name will automatically fit into the hierarchy.
Intermediate balusters	Offset from path(>0:right) 0.05 m 2 Material Beech	Scope Available in this project only
Panels and bars	Invisible	Available in all projects
Newel posts at the turn	Elevate by general increasing/decreasing o Exchange endings Bottom (start) ending Vertical ending C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C	6 OK Cancel
Balusters by big steps	Extension at beginni None	4 New
BIM Parameters	Extension at ending of None	Activate Modify
Akril korlát 3		OK Cancel Rename Delete

• Select the stair on the floor plan and select its properties. In the dialog, on the General properties tab, tick the Railing automatically added to the left side option. Select the "Acrylic railing" from the drop-down list, then hit OK.

Stair					\times
		1			
Stair Calculator				^	
Constal properties	* General				
General properties	Layer	Lepcso 02	~		
Support	Colour				
	Line type	Simple Line	~		
Step geometry	Line weights	0 mm	~		
Papersontation on the floor above	Draw Order	8- Bottom-most	~		
Representation on the noor above	* Railing				<u> </u>
	Railing automatically added to left side	\checkmark			
	Regenerate				
	Railing	Acrylic railing	\sim		
	Railing automatically added to right side				
	Regenerate				
	Railing	Acrylic railing	\sim		
	Representation in 2D				
	Nosing:	Along the stair	~		
	Nosing line-type	Szaggatott1	~		
	Section line	Dotted above the section line	~		
	Partial line-type	Szaggatott	~		
	Cutting elevation	1 m			
	Cutting line direction	20 °			
	Parallel distance	0.1 m			
	Draw walking line				
	Walking line arrow	4	\sim		
	Cut out landings on walking line				
	Walking line before landing				
	Text on walking line				
	Numbering (50% of current font size)				
	Walking line backward				
	Arrow fit the box				
	Show geometry text			~	
BIM Parameters	Normál lépcső			ОК	Cancel
	•				

• The railing automatically appears in the 3D window as well.

256

٠



Put the recently created railing and stair and the 2nd gallery railing to the "Stair02" layer.



In the Layer manager you can switch between "Stair01" and "Stair02" versions. This way you can easily and quckly activate different versions.

The end result using the "Stair01" layer:



The end result using the "Stair02" layer:

Ð



Finally switch on Object layer from the used layers in the Layer Walk and display the entire project including furnishing.

Workshop 8: Designing roofs



8. Workshop: Designing roofs

This workshop guides you through how to design a roof.

- Settings, creating styles
- Roof plane with three points
- Roof in sketch mode
- Extruded roof
- Roof slab
- Roof window, customized window, curtain wall

Watch the video of the workshop here.

8.1. Open and save project

First download the "Workshop Projects - Intermediate Course" from our website, then install it if it is not already installed. It contains the projects for the intermediate course workshops.

Start

- Start the ARCHLine.XP program.
- Click on the Open Project button.
- Open the following project:
 - ...\ARCHlineXP Draw\2024\Workshop_Intermediate\6_Roof\01_Roof_START.pro

Save project

- Before you start working on the project, save it under a new name.
- Select File / Save project as... command and rename the project, then select the folder you want to save it.

8.2. Settings and creating styles

The roof is one of the most complex architectural design elements. As it has loads of fine details that goes beyond simple roof plane representation, which can be sufficient for a conceptual design plan.

Let's see how we can achieve that all details are visible and also how we can design a simple roof with roof planes for a conceptual plan.

8.2.1. Roof - settings

First let's check the roof properties:

Go to Ribbon menu / Building / Roof tool and right-click on it. From the pop-up menu choose Property command.



Now the "Automatic roof" dialog window will come up.

🗞 A R C H 🛛 I N E.🕏

Automatic roof		×
General Properties Ø Eaves purlin Middle purlin (1/1) Ø Rafter (1/1) Ø Rafter (1/1) Ridge board Batten (1/1)	General properties Image: Simple Line Simple Line Image:	< Plane: 1 of 4 Update
Roof tiles	Show rafter/purlin structure in 3D (main switch)	
Projections and cut Layers and geometry	Show beams 2D representation (main sv	
Pitch and shape		Delete and rebuild all rafters and purlins
Information		Delete and rebuild all battens
		Redistribute tiles
BIM Parameters	tetõ1	OK Cancel

This property window has three sections. On the left side we can choose from the main property categories which can be modified in small details. The middle section shows all details of the selected main category. Finally, there is a "preview" window on the right side, here we can check the result of all modification. Clicking on the "3D preview mode" icon we can set other 3D representation mode.

- Select "Textured" view.
- We are currently on the **General Properties** tab. Now change the finely detailed 3D representation to much simpler one.

Plane: 1 of 4	× × ×
	No preview
	Wireframe
	Hidden line removal
	Textured
	Consistent colour

Automatic roof							×
-L-W-B	General	properties mple Line s sible	1m 🗸 💆 2 2	i1_Roof1 ∨ - Bottom-m¢ ∨	< >	Plane: 1 of 4 Update	
	Invis Reference	Cream_01 ible Cream_01 ce point for roof elev	ation				
General Properties	∩ A	3123 mm	Eaves overhang (L)	500 mm			
Eaves purlin	()B	2700 mm	Theoretic wall width	380 mm			
Middle purlin (1/1)		2700 mm			L		
Rafter (1/1)	OF	2303 mm					
Collar beam (1/1) (Rafter:1)	OF	3492 mm					
	G	3419 mm	Absolute elevation	8700 mm			
	Visible in	1 3D					
Batten (1/1)	Show	w roof layers in 3D	3D fixed				
Roof tiles		Roof layers]			
Projections and cut	Show	w rafter/purlin struct	ure in 3D (main switch)				
Layers and geometry	Show	w Battens in 3D (mai	n switch)				
Pitch and shape	Show	w beams 2D represe	ntation (main sv		Del	ete and rebuild all rafters and	purlins
Information				1		Delete and rebuild all batten	s
BIM Parameters						Redistribute tiles	
tető1						ОК	Cancel

- At the bottom can be found the "Visible in 3D" settings, first turn off "Show beams 2D representation" main switch.
- For the simplest representation "Show Battens in 3D" and "Show rafter / purlin structure in 3D" main switches should be also turned off. (If this is an architectural plan and these will be needed later then come back here and turn them on)
- In this example we don't need "Roof layers" so let's turn it off.
- In order to see changes, click on "Update" button above the preview window.
- Now change the roof material. Currently it is "Pine_natural" on side plane and bottom plane. Click on the name and set "Cream_01". Connect the material of the upper and lower planes so that both are changed.
- When you finished update the preview, press "Update" button. The changes immediately can be seen.
- On the left side click on the "Roof tiles", here can be set the material and the type of the roof tiles.
- Detailed roof tiling is not needed now, as we are preparing the interior design plan so turn off "Ridge" and "Valley" options.
- Updating the preview, the "Ridge" has disappeared. (Valley wasn't on the original model.) Now there is only a simple connection line between two planes.



Automatic roof				×
	Roof tile propertiee Basic Ridge	Valley Eaves	< > Plane: 1 of 4 Update	
General Properties				
Eaves purlin				
Middle purlin (1/1)				
✓ Rafter (1/1)				
Collar beam (1/1) (Rafter:1)				
✓ Ridge board				
✓ Batten (1/1)				
Roof tiles				
Projections and cut				
Layers and geometry				
Pitch and shape			Delete and rebuild all rafters and	purlins
Information			Delete and rebuild all batter	ıs
			Redistribute tiles	
BIM Parameters	tetõ1		ОК	Cancel

- Now click on the "**Projections and cut**" category. Here you can set where the roof cut the different walls. You can determine depending on which level you created the wall which connects to the roof to cut it or not.
- Select "All floors", so anywhere walls are coming from those will be chopped by the bottom of roof plane by all means.
- The next setting is to make visible the roof not just on that level it was originally created, but furthermore on the level above or below. You can also set the line type.
- Now turn off both options, so now the roof line can be seen where it was originally created.

Automatic roor				×
General Properties ✓ Eaves purlin ✓ Middle purlin (1/1) ✓ Rafter (1/1) ✓ Collar beam (1/1) (Rafter:1) ✓ Ridge board ✓ Batten (1/1) Roof tiles	Cut No cutting Cut No cutting All floors Own floor O on which floors visible? (Except for its own Upper Simple Line Below Pontozott6	Distance of cutting surface from bottom surface of roof (> 0: upside) 0 m	Plane: 1 of 4 Update	
Pitch and shape		-	Delete and rebuild all rafters and	purlins
Information			Delete and rebuild all batter	15
			Redistribute tiles	
BIM Parameters	tetõ1]	ОК	Cancel

- Now let's go back to **General Properties** and see through Reference point for roof elevation settings. There are several values from A to G, the diagram on the left side can help to interpret them.
- In this example we have to define "A" representing the wall knee height.
- Activate "A" and enter 1 m. Then set the "Eaves overhang" to 0.
- It is recommended to set the "Theoretic wall width" to the same value as the wall width on the original plan. If there is a difference the software alters the interior structure of the roof differently. Now it is 380 mm, this should not be changed.

Automatic roof		×
⊬-L-₩₩-₩	General properties	< > Plane: 1 of 4
G D C E A F	Simple Line Image: Simple Line Materials Image: Cream_01 Image: Cream_01 <th></th>	
General Properties	OC 1.03 m	
Eaves purlin		
Middle purlin (1/1)		
✓ Rafter (1/1)	G 1.3 m Base offset 7 m	
Collar beam (1/1) (Rafter:1)	Visible in 3D	R
✓ Ridge board	Show roof layers in 3D 3D fixed	
✓ Batten (1/1)	Roof layers	
Roof tiles	Show rafter/purlin structure in 3D (main switch)	
Projections and cut	Show Battens in 3D (main switch)	
Layers and geometry	Show beams 2D representation (main sv	
Pitch and shape		Delete and rebuild all rafters and purlins
Information		Delete and rebuild all battens
		Redistribute tiles
BIM Parameters	tető1	OK Cancel

We customized the settings.

8.2.2. Creating styles

We finished with modification of the roof properties, let's save it as a new style.

There is a button to do so at the bottom of the dialog window with the currently used style name on it.



Automatic roof		Styles
General Properties Eaves purlin Middle purlin (1/1) Rafter (1/1) Collar beam (1/1) (Rafter:1) Ridge board Batten (1/1) Rafter (1/1) Ridge board Batten (1/1) Rafter (1/1) Layers and geometry	General properties Image: Simple Line Simple Line Image: S	Plane: 1 of 8 Update Simple roof Simple roof Stell Roofing 900 Stell Roofing 900 Stell Roofing 900 Tool I Stell Roofing 900
Pitch and shape		Delete and rebuild all rafters and purlins
Information		Delete and rebuild all battens
BIM Parameters		Redistribute tiles Activate Modify
roof1		OK Cancel Rename Delete

- Click on "roof1", then the list of styles will appear on the right side. Here are those styles which can be used after installing the software.
- Now save it as a new style under the list. Click on "New" button.
- Enter the name of the new style "Roof_Interior", then press "OK". The program has created a new style.

< > Plane: 1 of 4 Update		Styles Complex roof wit Simple roof tetõ1	h tiling layer only	
	Styles New name of st Roof_interior Folder Subfolder Folder and subfi	yle older specification is not man ese, the given style name wil	datory. I automatically fit into the hier	× × × × × × archy.
Delete and rebuild all rafters and	purlins			
Delete and rebuild all batter Redistribute tiles	IS	Activate	Modify	
ОК	Cancel	Rename	Delete	0

• From now on the newly created style is active. This is indicated by the name of the style button on the bottom toolbar. You can continue to work with this new style settings until another one is activated.

Roof_interior

- New style can be activated by clicking on the selected style, then you choose "Activate" command at the bottom.
- Now the "Roof_Interior" style should be active, close the dialog by pressing "OK".

Using this style, we are going to create a new roof structure.

8.3. Creating roof plane with 3 points

In the first example we are going to create a roof by using three elevation points that we had measured before. This is where we are going to start:

• Select Ribbon menu / Building / Roof / Roof plane - p3 command.





 After starting the command, we have to define the roof contour. Click on four corner points alongside the outer wall.



When you are done, the program will bring up a dialog box asking you if the points you want to enter next will be the lowest points of the roof or the highest points. Here, select Yes, i.e. the lowest point.

- In three clicks, enter the three interior elevation points measured on site as in the example.
- Click on the first internal elevation point (corner point) and type 1800 mm as the first elevation point is 1800 mm. Press Enter or OK.



1		H	ARCHLine.XP	×
2	÷++	Å	Elevation at the point (the point is on the botton	n face)
		h	New value:	1800 mm
		3		OK Cancel

- Click on the second corner point inside and type 1800 mm, then hit Enter.
- Finally click inside of the third corner point and type 2600 mm, then hit Enter.
- The roof is finished, which is indicated by only contour lines on the floor plan. The modification is not striking as the roof contour overlaps other contours.
- On Navibar click on III "Magnify window" button and zoom in the 3D window, here you can see changes.
- Previously you set that the roof cuts walls. You have to update the model in order to cut walls according to the settings.
- The floor plan window is active. Click on 3 "3D hammer" icon on the Toolbar to rebuild the model.



8.4. Roof in Sketch mode

In the next example we are going to create a roof structure, which is automatically generated.

The roof will be drawn along inner walls; therefore, we have to modify the value of "Eaves overhang" by adding the wall thickness to it. So, the roof will overhang just that much to cover the walls entirely. Please do the followings.

- Click on Ribbon menu / Building / Roof and select properties with right-click.
- Modify the "Eaves overhang" value to 380 mm. You have to add the wall thickness to the existing value.

Reference point for roof elevation							
A	1000 mm	Eaves overhang (L)	380 mm				
OB		Theoretic wall width	380 mm				
Оc	685 mm						
OD	954 mm						
ОE	1027 mm						
OF	1369 mm						
G	1296 mm	Absolute elevation	n 7000 mm				

Accept changes by pressing "OK".

Now draw the roof.

 \square

- Activate floor plan window.
- Click on Ribbon menu / Building / Roof / Roof in Sketch mode command.



 Start to draw the contour along the corner points. Click on all corner points except the conservatory area as we have created a roof there in the previous example.

Be careful to click on the proper corner points in places with multiple corner points.



- When you finished, press Enter or click in the starting point.
- Set the 3D preview mode to "Consistent color" so you can see changes better.





Now let's see another option how to modify a roof.

- On the right side of the "Automatic roof" dialog window, select from the main categories "Pitch and shape". Here we can modify the roof plane settings.
- In the middle section we can find the top view of the roof, here we can click on any roof planes to modify.



• Let's start working on the roof plane shown in the picture below. You can find the number of roof planes above the Update button. You can easily swap between planes by using arrows next to numbering. (This makes it easy to select roof planes with a smaller surface area.)



 Simply change the roof plane to "Gable end" on 3/8 roof plane. Activate the "Gable end" option and click on "Update" above the 3D preview. The changes are striking. It looks that a roof plane disappears and a saddle type of roof is created instead.



Repeat the same on the roof planes 8/8, 7/8, 6/8, to create Gable end roof planes until you get the same result as in the
picture below.

271



• When you finished press update. The result is shown immediately.



The continuous changes on the roof structure are noticeable. As we turned off some of the roof planes, then roofs that remained unchanged are now connected to each other different way. Different edges, ridges, and valleys are formed accordingly as it is shown on our model.

Often, we want to change the roof inclination. Let's see how we can do it.

- Select a roof plane with a single click.
- Under "Main slope" you can define the way how the inclination is to be changed.
- In case you are working on an architectural plan, it is worth to set the inclination in degrees. In this instance all you have to
 do is to enter the value in the field.
- In this case enter 30° and refresh the 3D preview. You can see the roof became flatter.

Automatic roof		×
	Additional plane Hipped Additional plane Addi	< > Plane: 4 of 8 Update
General Properties	Gable end	
Eaves purlin Middle purlin (1/1)	I Half-hipped	
Rafter (1/1) Collar beam (1/1) (Rafter:1)	Hipped with gablet	
Image: Ridge board Image: Ridge board Image: Ridge board Image: Ridge board Image: Ridge board	C Mansard Elevation of reference line 0 m Eaves overhang on this 0.38 m	
Roof tiles	2D representation of roof	
Projections and cut	Symbolic top view	
Layers and geometry	O Horizontal section of roof in plan-view	
Pitch and shape	Section plane created with hatch	Delete and rebuild all rafters and purlins
Information	Section height from floor: 2 m 🦉 0.3 mm	Delete and rebuild all battens
		Redistribute tiles
BIM Parameters	Roof_interior	OK Cancel

• If you want to apply this value on all roof planes, then activate "Apply for all planes" option, then update the preview.

Automatic roof		×
		< > Plane: 4 of 8
		Update
	Additional plane	
	Hipped Main slope	
General Properties	Gable end	
Eaves purlin		
Middle purlin (1/1)	Half-hipped	
✓ Rafter (1/1)		
Collar beam (1/1) (Rafter:1)		
✓ Ridge board	Elevation of reference line 0 m	
Batten (1/1)	Eaves overhang on this 0.38 m	
Roof tiles	2D representation of roof	
Projections and cut	Symbolic top view	
Layers and geometry	O Horizontal section of roof in plan-view	
Pitch and shape	Section plane created with hatch	Delete and rebuild all rafters and purlins
Information	Section height from floor: 2 m 🖉 0.3 mm	Delete and rebuild all battens
		Redistribute tiles

Using degrees for defining a roof plane inclination can be very effective when we are designing the roof structure by ourselves. But if we are working with data collected from the site then we have to define the roof inclination by ourselves this is much more difficult situation. This can be only derived from the measured values such as distances, heights, projections. To avoid these calculations in the program exists an input method.

Click on the option button again. One of the three options is when a right-angled triangle appears.

a/b ∡a b

In essence the software calculates the inclination based on the measured length of a right-angled triangle. As you can see

- on the picture this value is **a/b**. Where "**a**" represents the vertical side and "**b**" is the horizontal side of the triangle.
- You can determine these values based on the values measured at the original site in this ratio pair.



The point is that, in a situation where the roof slope can be measured next to a wall at the original location, we can determine both values by defining either a horizontal or vertical surface. In this case, we measured a horizontal value of 1.9 m and a vertical value of 1.7 m relative to a 1 m knee wall height.

• Now type 1.7 as the vertical length (first), then 1.9 values as horizontal length (second).



- It is important to separate values with forward slash, but also enter space before and after it. Now these values will be interpreted as ratio pair not division. The inclination will be calculated accordingly.
 - To set the inclination at the same time for all roof planes activate "Apply for all planes", then update the 3D preview.
 - Now the inclination has been modified. If you click again on the option button, the software calculates the inclination in degrees according to the given values.



- Now close the dialog by pressing "OK", now the roof is completed.
- Finally fix the wall connections, by clicking on the 3D hammer.

As you can see in some cases the walls are not high enough to meet some of the roof planes. Now we have to adjust these values accordingly.

- Activate 3D window. Select any of those walls mentioned above.
- On the left side under properties change the wall height to that value which might reach the roof top point.
- In this example it is 8 m. Enter the value and press OK.



• After this modification the roof meets the wall. Due to the roof settings the roof cuts the wall anyway.

273





• Rotate the model to the opposite side, select all three walls by holding the CTRL key down, and modify heights to 8 m on the left side under properties. Hit Enter.



• In order to remove the border lines, surface integration is necessary. Use 3D hammer and those will disappear immediately.



8.5. Extruded roof

In this part we will create an extruded roof. It will be placed on the floor plan marked by blue.



When creating extruded roofs basically there is no need for predefined editing lines, but in our case, those will be very helpful.

• The 3D window must be activated, rotate the model to see the top roof plane as shown below.



- Now go back to the floor plan and activate it.
- Select Ribbon menu / Building / Roof / Extruded roof command.

In the pop-up dialog window change the followings:

 Under "Predefined roof" change the values "A and B" to 41.82°, this will be automatically converted into degrees and minutes.



Roof						
	Roof properties					
(RA) Ridge inclination	0°	\sim	RA			
Roof elevation From	\land Lower roof pane	~				
Roof elevation	-2.2 m	~	and the second se			
Elevation from roof top	0 m	~				
Fixed width	4 m	~				
Place on roof	V					
Ridge path	Line	~				
Predefined roof						
Туре	Triangle	\sim		(A)	41°49'	
(A)	41.82	~		(B)	41°49'	
(B)	42°	~				
Side roof	0 m	\sim				
Bottom of side roof	0 m	~				
Hip roof						
Hip roof						
Hip roof angle	35°	\sim	АВ			
Hip roof elevation	3.5 m	~				
	0.5 m	~				

• Click on the Roof properties, then on the Roof tiles tab, set the Roof - Brown material.

Automatic roof			×
The T	Roof tile properties Basic Ridge Valley Eaves RAL RAL Roof Rusty.gr Cream_0 Image: Cream_0<	Update	
Concel Properties			
Eaves purlin			
Middle purlin (1/1)			
Rafter (1/1)			
Collar beam (1/1) (Rafter:1)			
Ridge board			
Batten (1/1)			
Roof tiles			
Projections and cut			
Layers and geometry			
Pitch and shape		Delete and rebuild all rafters and	purlins
Information		Delete and rebuild all batten	IS
BIM Parameters		Redistribute tiles	
ROOF_WORKSHOP_		ОК	Cancel

- Accept the changes with OK.
- In the pop-up dialog window, you can characterize the extruded roof how to be projected into the main roof. The most common default setting can be found here, when the projected roof creates a cut-out along the contour of the connection underneath it. So, the projected roof is accessible and not a closed roof plane.
- Close the dialog by pressing "OK. As you can see the cursor shape has changed.

ARCH INE. 🕏

Projected roof	×
The program will automatically cut out the part of the target roof which lies under the extruded roof. The target roof will not be changed. The extruded roof will be extended in accordance with the target roof plane and inserted onto its apparent extrusion.	
The length of roof plane under the projected roof: 0 m	-

- Next you have to define which roof plane to use for the projection. Click on the eaves lines next to predefined lines.
- The software recognized the selected roof plane and the current roof can be moved according to the current settings.
- Click on one point and place the projected roof.



- Close the dialog by pressing ESC, as we don't need any more projected roofs as per the original floor plan.
- Use 3D hammer to generate the 3D model based on the floor plan.



The material and tiles are not the same compared to the previously created ones, in this example we didn't modify those relevant settings which can be found in Projected Roof dialog window under Roof properties. Obviously, these can be changed later as well.

8.6. Loft slab

Now we are going to move the whole roof structure to another level. In this example we are going to use this to eliminate the roof edge lines. This is also useful when we want to work out the fine details of the roof structure in a completely separate drawing.

8.6.1. Managing levels

At the moment we are working on the Loft level. We can add new layers in the "Level Edit" dialog window.



- Click on "Loft" tab at the bottom toolbar, then the Edit level dialog window will come up. Here we can find all levels which are here by default.
- Insert a new level by clicking on "Add-up" button (1).
- Click on the label twice and rename it to "Roof". We are going to move the roof structure to this level. Doing so now an empty Roof level is created above the Loft where all three roofs can be moved together.
- Close the dialog by pressing "OK".

279



Colour Simple Line Line type Pseudo Copies 0 mm Line weights Full copy Draw Order 8 - Bottom-most Rectangle profile Move objects to other floor Loft Polygon profile Loft Copy objects to other floor * VARIES * Cancel ок **BIM** parameters

That happened exactly what we were expecting in the 2D window, but in 3D as result the roof is now placed 3 m higher. Now let's move downwards.

- You can do this in the quickest way as follows. First select all three roofs in 3D.
- Then click on the vertical blue arrow, then select "Move" command.



- Move down the roof and type 3 m.
- Accept changes by pressing Enter, now the roof is placed correctly in 3D window as well.



• Activate the floor plan window. You can easily swap between levels (Roof, Loft) by using the blue arrows at the bottom toolbar. These levels now can be managed as completely separated items.



8.6.2. Creating Slab

Now we will create the slab on the Roof level.

- For this we have to move to Roof level by using blue arrows.
- In order to make visible it for editing later you have to choose the level down below, select the arrow next to Roof and open the level list.
- Click on the bulb icon next to Loft. Now it has changed to yellow.

Roof Loft Evel 1 Ground		
<	>	
🚓 Roof	~	1 1

On floor plan window the effect of this modification can be immediately seen. This method allows you to see different levels including the level you are currently working on.

Before creating the slab, check its properties.

- Go to Ribbon menu / Building / Properties / Slab tool.
- Now the Slab properties window will come up. Now select a new wall style. For this click on the currently use style name at the bottom. On the right side select from the style list the 300 mm thick reinforced concrete slab "1 layered 30 r.c. slab".
 Click on "Activate" button. Under properties all relevant details have changed, which are needed for later.
- It is very important to set "Cut by roofs" option to "All floors". So, if the slab meets the roof structure, the roof overlay will be automatically cut off by the roof.
- Close the dialog by pressing "OK".

Slab properties		Styles ×
General properties General properties General properties O mm Simple Line General properties General properties Simple Line General properties General properties	Cream_01 Cream_01 Cream_01 Cream_01 Slant angle 0° Slab type Slab v	 1 layered 08 r.c. slab 1 layered 15 r.c. slab. 2 layered r.c. slab 19+11 Coated drift 4+5+2 Coated flat roof1 Coated flat roof1 Coated floor2 Coated flat profi Coated flat profi
Slab layers Beams and block flooring system	Cut the walls No cutting V Cut by roofs All floors V	Counter slab15+5+1+20+7 Floor on the ground1 Floor on the ground2 Floor slab + hardcore
	U-value: U-value: Not calculated 3D fixed Fill color on floorplan No	Reinforced concrete 19+4+5+2 Reinforced concrete 19+4+7 Susp.ceiling 5+15+19+11
BIM Parameters 1 layered 30 r.c. slab.	OK Can	New Activate Modify cel Rename Delete

- Draw the slab by using Ribbon menu / Building / Slab / Slab in Sketch mode command.
- Click on the inner corner points except the conservatory and press Enter.
- The slab is ready.



🗞 A R C H | I N E.🕏



8.7. Placing openings

The next step is to install some windows and doors on the building.

8.7.1. Placing roof window

Let's start our work with placing roof windows.

• Activate 3D window rotate the model to make clearly visible the roof plane is shown below:



- Click on floor plan window and activate it.
- Select Ribbon menu / Building /Window and Roof Window command.



• The shape of the cursor has changed. Select that roof plan on which you want to work where you like to place roof windows. The location of the roof windows can be seen on the floor plan. (You should click on the outer contour of the roof plane to select.)

• The program immediately brings up "Window on roof" dialog, here you can define window properties.

It is important to select roof window. This makes sure that roof windows will be correctly represented on floor plan and 3D model.

- According to the current example, the window type should be a roof window. For this click on the "Default" button below the preview, this way we can have an access to the window library.
- Select from Window / Roof / Single folder "Window on roof" type.

I



• The width 1000 mm, thickness/ height 1800 mm, the distance from the upper roof plane is 30 m.



Window on roof						×
Main parameters	Width:		1000 mm	~	Re	fraw 🖉
Representation	Height:		1800 mm	~		
Roof connection	Thickness:		150 mm			
Basic geometry						
Outer handle	Distance from upper roof plane (>0:	30 mm				
Inner handle	Sill height	0 mm				
Accessories	Line type	S	imple Line	~		
	Line weights	0 mm		~		
	Draw Order	8- Bottom-most		~		
	The	rmal parameters				
Information	Ratio (Illumination area)	100%				
Create variant						
	Material	Value		^		
	Solid	Beech				17755555555555555555555555555555555555
	Glass material	Glass26 Default material			Section Sectio	Station
	Internal frame material	Default material				
	<			>		
					wind	ow on roof
BIM Parameters	No style				ОК	Cancel

• On the Roof connections tab, set the Top hole to Horizontal and the Bottom hole to Perpendicular to the Roof. This will give the most light to the room.

Window on roof	n touradh annan an teadhair annan annan	una anticante antication and anti-	unannek tekster – st. sonret-contro – senar	×
Main parameters			Redraw	
Representation	Material of surface of hole	Default m		
Roof connection	Top hole	Horizontal		-
Basic geometry	Bottom hole	Perpendicular V		
Outer handle	Angle from the vertical plane (B>0: outwards)	40°00'		
Inner handle				
Accessories				
Information				
Create variant		B		1
			window on roof	
BIM Parameters	No style		ОК Са	ncel

- Close the dialog with OK.
- Now place the windows.
- Since you don't want to place the window at a fixed height, where the program currently places it, select the **Place in 3D** plane option in the top menu bar.



• Place all four windows in any position you like with a single click. You can also follow the changes in the 3D window.



- If you want to place window on a separate roof plane, then press Enter to close the command and select the new roof plane.
- Close the pop-up dialog "Window on roof" dialog by pressing "OK", then place the window.





• Close the command with double Enter.

8.7.2. Place customized windows

Now we are going to create a customized window.

To create the window first we have to move to Loft level. We place the window on the wall is shown on the picture below:



- Activate the 3D window and change the perspective to an external view.
- Rotate the model to see the selected wall properly.



- Activate the floor plan window.
- Go to Ribbon menu / Building / Curtain wall and "select Reshape curtain wall" command.



- Now select the inner side of the wall with one click, then place its layout, but not to overlap the floor plan.
- Now a question will pop-up: "Do you want to keep the layout of wall?"- answer: YES.
- An alert message will appear asking to specify a profile in order to describe the frontal shape of the curtain wall. Please press "OK". You can start creating the pentagonal custom window on the extension.





• Click around the shape is shown below:



- When you close the polygon "Curtain Wall" dialog window will appear, here you can customize the window.
- At the moment we are going to keep the settings, close the dialog with "OK".
- The curtain wall now is visible on the floor plan and 3D window.



The mullion can be modified which we will demonstrate in the following example. Now close the command with ESC. Now the customized window is ready.

8.7.3. Conservatory with curtain walls

The last openings that will be placed in this project will transform the walls of conservatory into curtain walls.

• Activate 3D window and rotate the model to clearly see the conservatory.


- The modification can be done in 2D and 3D window. Now work in 3D.
- Select Ribbon menu/ Building / Curtain wall / Convert wall into curtain wall command.
- As you move the cursor you can see that the software recognizes wall planes. Click on one of the conservatory walls, then it turns into curtain wall with the current settings.
- Modify the other two walls.
- Close command with Enter, now the conservatory has glazed walls.



Let's see an example how to customize curtain walls.

- Select the curtain wall on the left side and open its properties.
- Click on "Basic geometry" tab. On this tab you can define Curtain wall properties that are related to divisions, representation and even the geometric representation of the window.
- In this example we modify only one thing the division.
- Now change the number of glasses horizontal and vertical to 1-1, then press OK to close the dialog.

Main parameters Representation Reveal	Mullion properties			Redraw	
Main parameters Representation Reveal	Mullion properties			Redraw	
Representation	Mullion properties				
Reveal	Mullion thickness				
Reveal	Fidilion and reas	0.05 m			
	Mullion width	0.05 m			
acia gaomotru	Mullion material	Steel			
asic geometry	Offset of mullion (>0: aw	0.02 m			
uter handle	Mullion placement relative to	Middle	~		
	☆ Basic geometry				
iner handle	Glass width	0.01 m			
rcessories	Glass material	Glass26			
.00000000	Offset of glass (>0: away fr	0.04 m			
terior and exterior sills	Fixed Distance				
da ta dalarda	Horizor	ntal Spacing			
Jiit-In details	Vertic	al Spacing			
	No. of glasses in horizontal:	1			
	No. of glasses in vertical:	1			
	Glass Transparency				
	Frame properties				
	Frame width	0.03 m			
	Frame Thickness	0.1 m			
	Frame material	Steel			
	Top frame				
	Bottom frame				
	Mullion on left side when fram				
	Right frame				
	Mullion on right side when fran	me is OFF			
	Corner column exists				
			, I		
BIM Parameters	Defalult			OK	Cancel

- Do the same for the right-hand curtain wall on the opposite side.
- Finally, go into the properties of the middle curtain wall and here just change the number of glasses in horizontal to 2.
- Close the dialog with "OK" and now the conservatory is ready.



8.7.4. Creating complex roof window

Let's create a complex roof window with the combination of a roof window and a window in the wall.

- Activate the 2D window and navigate to the left roof window.
- Set the properties of the window by right-clicking the Window command.
- Click on the Flush designation to change the window style to "1 leaf double glassed" type from the library.
- Set the Width to 1000 mm, the Height to 1160 mm and the Parapet Height to 0 mm.

Window						×
Main parameters Representation Reveal, void, niche, cavity	Width: Height: Thickness:		1000 mm 1160 mm 100 mm	✓	Redraw	•
Basic geometry	Hide oppoing and make a void					
Inner handle	Distance from wall line	100 mm				
	Sill height	0 mm				
Accessories	Outer sill height:	0 mm				
Interior and exterior sills	Add level shift					
Built-in details	Colour Line type		Simple Line			
Information	Line weights	0 mm	•	~		
	Draw Order	8- Bottom-most		~		
	Reference axis	Side		~		
Create variant	Distance from wall corner	2083 mm				
Create variant	Lining and architrave					
		Dimension, consignment				
	Thermal parameters					
	Ratio (Illumination area) 100%					
	Ratio (Ventillation area)	100%				
	Material	Value				
	Solid	Beech				
	Glass material	Glass26				
	External frame material	Default material				
	Internal frame material	Default material				
				ſ	1 leaf double gl	assed
BIM Parameters	No sty	le			ОК	Cancel

• Use the *Place window* command to position a window so that it is flush with the bottom plane of the roof window.



• Go to the Roof level, select the roof window and click on the top left corner to select *Move*. Move it to the outside of the window in the wall plane.





The roof will still cut into the window in the plane of the wall, so in the next steps we will modify the contour of the roof so that it does not cut into the window.

• Select the roof and click on its contour. Then in the pop-up window, select the Insert Node option.



• Place a node at each end of the window, then click on the roof outline in the window line and select Offset. Drag the plane of the roof to the inside of the window, then click to place it.



• The window is ready, the end result should look like in the picture below:



8.8. Blinds and curtains on roof windows

We can place curtains and blinds on different window types. Now we will place an aluminum Venetian blind on the roof window.

• Activate the floor plan and select the Ribbon Bar / Interior/ Soft furnishing / Venetian blind.



Place the Venetian blind on the floor plan. First select the lower corner point of the window, the upper.



• In the appearing dialog set the following parameters: Top height: 2460 mm, Bottom height: 400 m, Angle of inclination: 48.19 (since we measure the angle from the vertical and the rotation point is on the top of the blind)

Venetian blind		×
		B A A B
Top height Angle of inclination 2460 mm 48°11' Bottom height Uirection of inclination 400 mm 0° Width 0° 1000 mm Height 2060 mm	Beech Beech tree Default Steel Cream_0	+ / () () () () () () () () () ()
Position and sizes	Automatic refresh on page	OK Cancel

• The program automatically places the blind before the roof window.

Venetian blind			×
			6 🕫 🍳 🔒 🔎
Strip width -0.03 m Spacing 0.027 m V	Strip rotation 81]	
Venetian blind		Automatic refresh on page	OK Cancel

- Set the retraction of the blind by clicking on the second tab.
- Select the blind and rewrite its relative height to 15 m.
- Place a blind on the lower, fixed window as well with the following parameters: width: 850 m, height: 1030 mm, relative elevation: 70 m.



This is how the complex roof window looks like with the blinds and furniture:





Workshop 9: Design Phases



9. Workshop: Design Phases

Using the design phases, it is possible to present the existing status and the new construction plan simultaneously in a single project file on the same drawing. Using phase filters, all stages of the design process can be demonstrated. Renovating buildings or planning more complex projects is significantly simpler using the design phases.

A huge advantage is that when modifying elements that appear in all phases of design – for example, when we want to correct the inaccuracies of the survey – changes appear immediately in all phases, since we are talking about the representation of the same element at different times.

- Watch the video of the workshop here.
- Open ...\Documents\ARCHlineXP Draw\2024\Workshop_Intermediate\9_Phases\Elata_nova_FINAL_Surrounding.pro file. Save it under a different name. You can also choose the Phases_START.pro file, on the basis of which the video tutorial was created.

9.1. Design phases

The four main phases of the planning process:

- 1. Existing state (recording survey data)
- 2. Demolition plan (representation of the parts to be demolished)
- 3. Existing plan after demolition (elements have been demolished)
- 4. New construction plan (realized condition after renovation)

The phases that can be used during planning can be: Existing or New. Creating a new item is always assigned to the current phase (Existing or New) An item cannot be created in the Demolition phase. Items marked for demolition from New or Existing phases are added to the Demolition phase.

The phases can be followed throughout the documentation in the form of a 3D view, sections, elevations and a material overview.

Setting the phases

There are several ways to categorize each element:

Select the Ribbon bar / Edit / Phases option. After selecting a phase from this menu, you can select the objects on the floor plan or in the 3D view for which you want to validate the selected view.



You can move the selected item to the appropriate phase by right-clicking the item or selecting the item and selecting the additional options then clicking on the Phase.





Phase settings for drawing elements

During the designing process, we can not only work with basic objects, but also depict certain details with other additional elements. When setting phases, you can therefore set not only which phases to display on walls, doors, and roofs, but also other objects, 3D elements, and drawing 2D elements, as well as scaling. This makes it much easier to use this feature during the designing process.

Phases for scaling

Scaling is in a special situation compared to other drawing elements because they are almost always related to another element depicted in some phase. Here, therefore, we distinguish two main cases:

- If the scaling scales the element(s) that are entirely in the same phase, the scaling disappears or is displayed when the phase is turned on / off.
- If the scaling scales elements in two different phases, it does not belong to either, in which case it will still be visible when any phase is switched off.

9.2. Phase filters

Phase filters are representation rules for displaying elements by status (New, Existing, Demolition): ARCHLine.XP® has 5 phase filters:

- 1. All phases
- 2. Existing plan
- 3. Demolition plan
- 4. Existing plan after demolition
- 5. New construction plan

In the Drawing Status Manager, on the left are the various phase display settings. When you place Existing or New items, the program automatically places the objects in the appropriate phase.



It is possible to categorize items not only before they are drawn, but you can change this setting at any stage of the workflow in one of the ways described earlier.

Appearance of phases

The images below show examples of Existing plan, Demolition plan, Existing plan after demolition and New construction plan Phases.

Existing plan



Demolition plan

ARCHLine.XP® automatically marks the elements to be decomposed in red on the floor plan and in 3D.



Existing plan after demolition ARCHLine.XP® in 3D depicts empty spaces created in place of removed elements along with the remaining structures.



New construction plan

The remaining and newly designed items are visible at the same time.



All phases

ARCHLine.XP® displays the elements of all phases at once. Useful representation for alignments and checks.



Wall parts in different phases

In the case of walls, it is also possible to mark only a certain part of the wall for demolition.

In this case, you can use the *Edit / Cut with wall* or *Cut with line option* from the wall's local menu to cut the wall in half at the desired point, to have a remaining and a demolished part. After the successful cutting of the wall, a line in the wall indicates the boundary line of the two newly created wall parts. To remove the line, you can use the *T connection* command to connect the two new parts of the wall you just cut. One of the sections can then be moved to the appropriate phase.

9.3. Graphic overrides

Thanks to the graphic overrides, the representation of the different phases can be customized according to the needs of different disciplines. A graphic override is nothing more than specifying that an item with a given color, lineweight, and fill appears with the color, lineweight, and fill specified in the override, despite its original properties. This allows, for example, all elements of the demolition plan marked for demolition to appear automatically in red at the same time, without the need to change their appearance by any other manual method.



Graphic overrides can be determined in the phase filter for each phase separately. In the case of the "All" phase, which is used to display the phases on top of each other, it can be used as a clear, color-separated technical or even documentation drawing with the appropriate settings.

The appearance of each element in the phases can be fully customized: the colors, linetypes, lineweights, fills and the way they are displayed can also be customized.

Graphic override						
Phase Filters	New		Existing		Demolished	
All	No override	\sim	No override	\sim	No override	\sim
Existing plan	No override	\sim	No override	\sim	No override	\sim
Demolition plan	No override	\sim	No override	\sim	Overridden	\sim
Existing plan after Demolition	No override	\sim	No override	\sim	Overridden	\sim
New Construction plan	No override	\sim	No override	\sim	Overridden	\sim
Reset	Update each row with current one		Update each row with current o	ne	Update each row with current	one
Graphic overrides specify the display for new, demolished, and existing elements in all views that use the phase filters. You can define how you want to display the elements' phase status (New, Existing, Demolished) for each phase filters. Select Overridden to change the display of elements or lt;brgt;By category to retain the original graphic properties.						
			ОК		Cancel	

This feature allows you to deviate from the default settings, which may be required for either regional or industry reasons.

The feature can also be useful if you want to compare new elements, existing elements, and elements to be demolished in the plan. By specifying custom settings for the different phases, you can view the entire plan in both floor plan and 3D views by clicking All Phases.



9.4. Design phases on the sheets

The drawings placed on the layout sheet are displayed according to the current design phase. There is also a way to modify the design phase, so that regardless of the current drawing state, you can quickly compile a design sheet that shows different phases of the same drawing even side by side.

There are two ways to display the different phases on a design sheet:

- On the floor plan, set the appropriate phase, and after the program has loaded it, place the drawing on the sheet.
- Place the drawing on the sheet, and then in the drawing properties change the phase filter drop-down menu to the desired phase.

Plot layout					
	Layer				
	Classes				
	Floors: place floors as displayed in floor plan				
	Floor				
	Drawing scale				
	0.01 1:100 ~				
	Architectural scale				
	1:100 ~				
	Phase Filters				
	New Construction plan \sim				
	All				
	Existing plan Demolition plan				
	Existing plan after Demolition				
144 x 214.6 mm	New Construction plan				
	OK Cancel				

Changing the phase of the floor plan view does not affect the phases set in the print view, so you can change the phases in the drawings without interruption.

Drawing comparison

With this function it is possible for the program to compare different phases automatically.

This requires the "Compare between 2 design phases" option of the Ribbon bar / Documentation / Drawing Comparison / Drawing Comparison command, which you can select from the list after starting the command.

Based on the parameters that can be set in the comparison window, displays the program the corresponding buildings, levels, phases, colors and display modes.



The resulting drawing is treated as a closed, non-editable, dynamically updatable group that you can place in the print view. If you change the plan, you can also update the comparison drawing with the "Update Comparison" command.



🐟 ARCH INE. 🕏